AL-BAHER

CONNECT PLUS 6

Second Term

Parents' Guide

SCHOOL

Primary

6

Name : ....

Class : ....

School: ....

Contents



Writing Skills

1 How to write a paragraph: كيف تكتب فقرة إنشائية

1. اترك مسافة في بداية السطر الأول تقريبًا ١ سم.
2. ابدأ كل جملة بحرف Capital.
3. ضع (.) في نهاية كل جملة.
4. اتبع علامات الترقيم.
5. ابدأ جملتك بالفاعلً ثم الفعل ونوّع بدايات الجمل.
6. استخدم الزمن المناسب للموضوع.
7. استخدم جمل بسيطة.
8. حسن خطك واترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.

2 How to write an email: كيف تكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني

From : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل

To : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه

Subject : موضوع الرسالة

Dear / Hi / Hello اسم المرسل إليه ,
How are you? I'm happy to write this email to you. ← جملة افتتاحية

.... موضوع الرسالة ....

- Write back soon and tell me your news. ← جملة ختامية
- Best wishes.

Yours,
اسم المرسل

Send | A | Saved

❸ How to write a personal profile: كيف تكتب ملف شخصي

1. Start with a greeting: Hi / Hey — ابدأ بالتحية مثل: Hi / Hey
2. Give your name, your age, and where you live. — اذكر اسمك و عمرك وأين تعيش.
3. Describe what you look like. — صف شكلك (مظهرك الخارجي).
4. Tell people about your hobbies: (I'm into .... / I'm keen on ... / My favorite hobby is ...)
   أخبر الناس عن هواياتك: (أنا أحب .... / أنا مولع بـ ..... / هوايتي المفضلة هي ......)
5. **Ask them to write to you:** — **اطلب منهم أن يكتبوا لك:**

- I can't wait to hear from you! — لا أطيق الانتظار حتى أسمع أخبارك!
- Write and tell me about yourself! — اكتب وأخبرني عن نفسك!

❹ How to write a report: كيف تكتب تقريرًا

1. Use sequencing words to order your ideas: First, Next, Then, and Finally.
   استخدم كلمات التسلسل لترتيب أفكارك: أولًا، ثانيًا، ثم/ وفي النهاية.
2. Use "When" to talk about the order in which things happen.
   استخدم "عندما " للتحدث عن ترتيب حدوث الأشياء.
3. Draw pictures to illustrate each stage of the report.
   ارسم صورًا لتوضيح كل مرحلة في التقرير.

❺ How to write a short story: كيف تكتب قصة قصيرة:

1. **Plot:** — حبكة القصة (الأحداث)
   وهي الأسلوب المُحكم الذي يتم به عرض الأحداث وتصاعدها وصولًا لذروة الموقف حتى الوصول للنهاية.
2. **Setting:** — المكان والزمان
   لابد من تحديد المدى الزمني والمكان الذي تدور فيه الأحداث.
3. **Characters:** — الشخصيات
   يجب الاهتمام بعرض وتطوير الشخصيات حتى تبدو حقيقية بالنسبة للقارئ، فالشخصيات هي التي تقوم بالأحداث في القصة ولابد أن تتطور الأحداث.
4. **Narrating:** — السرد
   يجب الاهتمام بأسلوب الكتابة، واستخدام الجمل القصيرة يعطي تشويقًا ويجعل تسلسل الأحداث أكثر وضوحًا.
5. **Moral:** — المغزى الأخلاقي
   لابد أن يكون للقصة مغزى أخلاقي أو درس مُستفاد يخرج به القارئ.

Unit 5

Go explore!

انطلق واستكشف



In this unit, the students will ...

- read and understand the use of pronouns in texts. — يقرأ النصوص ويفهم استخدام الضمائر فيها.
- understand and use phrasal verbs. — يفهم ويستخدم الأفعال المركبة.
- listen for specific details. — يستمع لتحديد تفاصيل معينة.
- ask for further details in conversations. — يطلب مزيد من التفاصيل أثناء المحادثات.
- guess the meaning of words from context. — يخمن معاني الكلمات من خلال السياق.
- understand and use the present simple passive. — يفهم ويستخدم صيغة المبني للمجهول في زمن المضارع البسيط.
- write a simple biography using sequencing words. — يكتب سيرة ذاتية بسيطة باستخدام كلمات الترتيب.
- understand the moral of a story. — يفهم المغزى الأخلاقي للقصة.

Lesson (1) AHMAD IBN MAJID

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

astronomy	علم الفلك	fascinated by	مفتون بـ - مهتم بـ	peninsula	شبه جزيرة
navigate	يبحر	navigator	ملاح - بحار	sailors	بحارة

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

person	شخص	Oman	دولة عمان	compass	بوصلة
master	سيد - ماهر	great	عظيم - رائع	design	يصمم - تصميم
ocean	محيط	reliable	يُعتمد عليه - موثوق به	routes	طرق
intelligent	ذكي - ماهر	poems	قصائد - شعر	language	لغة
winds	رياح	famous	مشهور	geography	جغرافيا
space	فضاء	planets	كواكب	history	تاريخ
stars	نجوم	monsoons	الرياح الموسمية	math	علم الرياضيات
except	ما عدا	explorer	مستكشف	studies	دراسات

Definitions تعريفات

navigator	a person who can find their way at sea	ملّاح
astronomy	the study of everything in space – the planets and the stars	علم الفلك
sailors	people who work on a ship or boat	بحارة
peninsula	a piece of land with sea all around it, except for one side	شبه جزيرة
fascinated by	very interested in	مفتون بـ - مهتم بـ
navigate	find your way at sea	يبحر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
travel	يسافر	traveled	traveled
explore	يستكشف	explored	explored
improve	يحسن	improved	improved
describe	يصف	described	described

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
find	يجد	found	found
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
have/ has	يملك - لديه	had	had
see	يرى	saw	seen
write	يكتب	wrote	written
know	يعرف	knew	known
become	يصبح	became	become

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

the first Arab seaman	أول بحار عربي	the Indian Ocean	المحيط الهندي
hundreds of years ago	منذ مئات السنين	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
the Arabian Peninsula	شبه الجزيرة العربية	over the years	على مر السنين
across the world	عبر العالم	travel safely	يسافر بأمان
a piece of	قطعة من	listen to	يستمع إلى
known as	معروف بأنه	on the sea	في البحر
at the young age	في سن صغير		

Listen and read.

Famous navigators





Ahmad Ibn Majid

Have you heard about Ahmad Ibn Majid? He is the person who made it easier for us to travel on the sea today. Ibn Majid was the first Arab seaman, and he learned how to **navigate** the seas. "Navigate" means "to find your way around".

هل سمعت عن أحمد بن ماجد؟ إنه الشخص الذي سهّل علينا السفر في البحر اليوم. كان ابن ماجد أول بحار عربي، ويعلم الملاحة في البحار. "الملاحة" يعني "العثور على طريقك".


Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Ahmad Ibn Majid lived hundreds of years ago. He was born in 1432, in what is now Oman. As a child, he was **fascinated by** the sea. He loved to listen to stories about sailing from his father and grandfather, who were great **sailors**. They also had their own ships. Before Ibn Majid was born, his dad and grandfather sailed the Red Sea and the Indian Ocean. Ibn Majid wanted to explore the seas and oceans, too. At the young age of seven, he went on his first journey on the sea.

عاش أحمد بن ماجد منذ مئات السنين، ولد عام ١٤٣٢ في ما يعرف الآن بدولة عمان. عندما كان طفلاً، كان مفتونًا بالبحر. كان يحب الاستماع إلى قصص الإبحار من والده وجده اللذين كانا بحارين عظيمين. وكان لديهم أيضًا سفنهم الخاصة. قبل أن يولد ابن ماجد، أبحر والده وجده في البحر الأحمر والمحيط الهندي. أراد ابن ماجد استكشاف البحار والمحيطات أيضًا. في سن السابعة، ذهب في أول رحلة له في البحر.

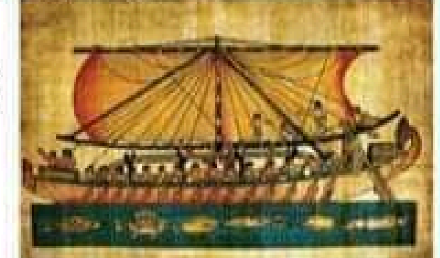
Ibn Majid was a very intelligent man and studied a lot. He learned languages, and learned about math, geography, and **astronomy**. Astronomy was important because the stars at night helped sailors to find their way. Ibn Majid's studies helped him understand the winds, the monsoons, and the stars in the sky.

كان ابن ماجد رجلاً ذكيًا جدًا ودرس كثيرًا. لقد تعلم اللغات وتعلم الرياضيات والجغرافيا وعلم الفلك. كان علم الفلك مهمًا لأن النجوم في الليل ساعدت البحارة في العثور على طريقهم. دراسات ابن ماجد ساعدته على فهم الرياح والرياح الموسمية والنجوم في السماء.

As he got older, Ibn Majid became known as a master **navigator**. He used a compass, but when he saw it could work better on the seas, he improved the design. It was then more reliable for sailors to use.

ومع تقدمه في السن، أصبح ابن ماجد معروفًا بأنه ملاح محترف. لقد استخدم بوصلة، ولكن عندما رأى أنها يمكن أن تعمل بشكل أفضل في البحار، قام بتحسين التصميم. ثم أصبح استخدام البحارة لها أكثر موثوقية.

Over the years, Ibn Majid wrote 38 books describing what he knew. Some of his books had information about routes to different places, and some described the history of sailing. They helped sailors travel from the Arabian **Peninsula** to India, East Africa, and other places. He even wrote poems!



وعلى مر السنين، كتب ابن ماجد ٣٨ كتابًا يصف فيها ما يعرفه. احتوت بعض كتبه على معلومات حول الطرق المؤدية إلى أماكن مختلفة، وبعضها وصف تاريخ الإبحار. لقد ساعدت كتبه البحارة على السفر من شبه الجزيرة العربية إلى الهند وشرق إفريقيا وأماكن أخرى. حتى أنه كتب قصائد شعرا!

Across the world, Ahmad Ibn Majid is still famous. His books have helped many sailors for hundreds of years. With Ibn Majid's help, we can all travel safely on the seas.

ولا يزال أحمد بن ماجد مشهورًا في جميع أنحاء العالم. وقد ساعدت كتبه العديد من البحارة لمئات السنين. وبمساعدة ابن ماجد، يمكننا جميعًا السفر بأمان عبر البحار.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ahmed Ibn Majid was born in ....
   a) 1430 b) 1431 c) 1432 d) 1433
2. As a child, he was fascinated by the ....
   a) river b) sea c) lake d) ocean
3. He loved to listen to .... about sailing.
   a) stories b) news c) the radio d) music
4. His father and grandfather were great ....
   a) players b) teachers c) doctors d) sailors

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

monsoons - astronomy - languages - sailors - doctors

Ibn Majid was a very intelligent man and studied a lot. He learned, 1).............................., and learned about math, geography, and 2).............................. Astronomy was important because the stars at night helped 3).............................. to find their way. Ibn Majid's studies helped him understand the winds, the 4).............................., and the stars in the sky.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A .... is a person who can find their way at sea.
   a) footballer b) navigator c) doctor d) teacher
2. .... is the study of everything in space – the planets and the stars.
   a) Geography b) Geology c) Astronomy d) History
3. .... are people who work on a ship or a boat.
   a) Sailors b) Engineers c) Bakers d) Butchers
4. "To find your way at sea" means to ....
   a) understand b) swim c) fly d) navigate
5. "..." means very interested in.
   a) Fascinated by b) Famous for c) Listen to d) Look after

Read the following text and answer the questions.

As he got older, Ibn Majid became known as a master navigator. He used a compass, but when he saw it could work better on the seas, he improved the design. It was then more reliable for sailors to use. Over the years, Ibn Majid wrote 38 books describing what he knew. Some of his books had information about routes to different places, and some described the history of sailing. They helped sailors travel from the Arabian Peninsula to India, East Africa, and other places. He even wrote poems! Across the world, Ahmad Ibn Majid is still famous. His books have helped many sailors for hundreds of years. With Ibn Majid's help, we can all travel safely on the seas.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ahmad Ibn Majid used a .... on the seas.
   a) clock b) compass c) tablet d) watch
2. Some of Ibn Majid's books described the history of ....
   a) swimming b) shopping c) sailing d) hiking

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How did the books help sailors? ....
4. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. write - did - What - type - of books - Ibn Majid - ?

....

2. to navigate - Ibn Majid - learned - the seas - how - .

....

3. ago - of - Ibn Majid - lived - hundreds - years - .

....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Ahmad Ibn Majid

Guiding elements:

(first Arab seaman - fascinated by - learned - books)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2) LANGUAGE

Vocabulary الكلمات

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
the world	العالم	answer	إجابة
luckily	لحسن الحظ	helpful	متعاون
lucky	محظوظ	bears	دببة
Morocco	دولة المغرب	wheelchair	كرسي متحرك
Moroccans	المغاربة "شعب المغرب"	wildcats	قطط برية
Marrakech	مراكش	wolves	ذئاب
organized	مُنظم	form	استمارة
disability	إعاقة	countries	دول
riad	رياض "منزل مغربي"	excited	متحمس
French	فرنسي	swimming pool	حمام سباحة
special	خاص	Spain	أسبانيا
airport	مطار	problem	مشكلة
staff	هيئة الموظفين	wonderful	رائع
phrases	عبارات		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
decide	يقرر	decided	decided
see	يرى	saw	seen
say	يقول	said	said
tell	يخبر	told	told
wake up	يوقظ - يستيقظ	woke up	woken up
put	يضع	put	put

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on the internet	على الإنترنت	famous for	مشهور ب
a lot of	الكثير من	hiking shoes	حذاء للتنزه على الأقدام
a walking trip	نزهة سيرًا على الأقدام	golden eagles	النسور الذهبية
far away	بعيدًا		
Pecos de Europe national park			حديقة بيكوس دي يوروب الوطنية

Listen and read.

Blog Log in Upload Download

Hi! My name's Lucy. When I was 14, I decided to travel around the world and see as many countries as possible. My mom said "yes"! I was so excited! We decided to go to Morocco first. I use a wheelchair, so we had to be very organized, but that wasn't a problem. We **filled in** the forms to tell the train and plane staff about my disability, and everybody was very helpful. I **looked up** the best places to visit on the internet before we left.

أهلاً! اسمي لوسي. عندما كان عمري 14 عامًا، قررت السفر حول العالم ورؤية أكبر عدد ممكن من البلدان. قالت أمي "نعم"! لقد كنت متحمسة جدا! قررنا الذهاب إلى المغرب أولاً. أنا أستخدم كرسيًا متحركًا، لذا كان علينا أن نكون منظمين للغاية، لكن ذلك لم يكن مشكلة. لقد ملأنا النماذج لإخبار طاقم القطار والطائرة عن إعاقتي، وكان الجميع متعاونين للغاية. لقد بحثت عن أفضل الأماكن للزيارة على الإنترنت قبل مغادرتنا.

My favorite place in Morocco was Marrakech. I loved the food there. We stayed at a riad, which is a special house in Morocco. There was a swimming pool, and my mom **woke** me **up** early so I could swim every day. Moroccans speak French, so I **picked up** a lot of French phrases while I was there. When the taxi **dropped** us **off** at the airport, I felt a bit sad. Morocco is a wonderful place!

كان المكان المفضل لدي في المغرب هو مراكش. أحببت الطعام هناك. بقينا في رياض، وهو منزل خاص في المغرب. كان هناك حمام سباحة، وقد أيقظتني أمي مبكرًا حتى أتمكن من السباحة كل يوم. يتحدث المغاربة الفرنسية، لذلك تعلمت الكثير من العبارات الفرنسية أثناء وجودي هناك. عندما أوصلتنا سيارة الأجرة إلى المطار، شعرت بالحزن قليلاً. المغرب مكان رائع!

Lesson (2)

Blog Log in Upload Download

Hello, I'm Mazen! Last year, I went on a walking trip in Spain with my dad. Mom **saw** us **off** at the airport. When we landed, we got a bus to the Picos de Europe national park. It's very beautiful, and it was quite easy to walk.

مرحبًا، أنا مازن! في العام الماضي، ذهبت في رحلة سيرًا على الأقدام في إسبانيا مع والدي. لقد ودعتنا أمي في المطار. عندما هبطنا، ركبنا حافلة إلى حديقة بيكوس دي يوروب الوطنية. إنها جميلة جدًا، وكان من السهل جدًا المشي.

We went in June, when it wasn't too hot. We were lucky to see some beautiful birds, but we didn't know what they were. I **figured** the answer **out** by looking online – they were golden eagles. That was very special. We also saw some brown bears and wildcats! Luckily, they were far away! The park is famous for its wolves, but sadly, we didn't see any. It was a great trip, and I was sad to **put** my hiking shoes **away!**

لقد ذهبنا في شهر يونيو، عندما لم يكن الجو حارًا جدًا. لقد حالفنا الحظ برؤية بعض الطيور الجميلة، لكننا لم نعرف ما هم. لقد توصلت إلى الإجابة من خلال البحث عبر الإنترنت - لقد كانوا نسورًا ذهبية. كان ذلك مميزًا جدًا. لقد رأينا أيضًا بعض الدببة البنية والقطط البرية! ومن حسن الحظ أنهم كانوا بعيدين! تشتهر الحديقة بالذئاب، لكن للأسف لم نرى أيًا منها. لقد كانت رحلة رائعة، وكنت حزينًا لخلع حذائي المخصص للمشي ووضعه في مكانه!

Listen and read.

Fares : Hello, Samir. Where have you been?

مرحبا سمير. أين كنت؟

Samir : We've been to the airport to see off my uncle and aunt. They've flown home to Jordan. The flight left at 8 am so we had to wake up at four o'clock. I'm really tired.

لقد ذهبنا إلى المطار لتوديع عمي وعمتي. لقد عادوا جوًا إلى وطنهم الأردن. غادرت الرحلة في الساعة 8 صباحًا لذلك كان علينا أن نستيقظ في الساعة الرابعة. أنا متعب حقًا.

Fares : Oh, dear! I've never been to the airport. What was it like?

يا إلهي! لم أذهب إلى المطار أبدًا. كيف كان شكله؟

Samir : Crowded! Dad dropped us off at the front while he parked the car. At first, we couldn't figure out where to go, but Mom found the right place.

مزدحم! لقد أنزلنا أبي أمامه بينما كان يركن السيارة. في البداية، لم نتمكن من معرفة أين نذهب، لكن أمي وجدت المكان المناسب.

Fares : Cool. We're going to the United States next year, so my sister and I will need passports. Mom will fill in the forms for us.

رائع. سنذهب إلى الولايات المتحدة العام المقبل، لذا سنحتاج أنا وأختي إلى جوازات سفر. سوف تملأ أمي الاستمارات لنا.

Samir : Wow! You'll pick up some cool American phrases while you're there.

رائع! ستتعلم بعض العبارات الأمريكية الرائعة أثناء تواجدك هناك.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



Phrasal verbs

الأفعال الاصطلاحية

A phrasal verb is a verb that is followed by a preposition. The preposition changes the meaning of the verb.

الفعل الاصطلاحي: عبارة عن فعل يليه حرف جر وحرف الجر يغير معنى الفعل.

She **saw** the picture in the book. (see = notice with your eyes) هنا "see" بمعنى يرى

She **saw off** her husband before he traveled. (saw off = said goodbye)

هنا "see off" بمعنى يودع

Look at the phrasal verbs again. When phrasal verbs have an object, this affects the word order.

لاحظ: عندما يكون للفعل الاصطلاحي مفعول فهذا يؤثر على ترتيب الجملة.

عندما يكون المفعول اسمًا، يمكن أن يأتي بين الفعل وحرف الجر أو بعد حرف الجر.

e.g. I **filled** the form **in** before I left. (the form is the object). الاستمارة هنا مفعول

You can also say: I **filled in** the form before I left. هنا حرف الجر يتبع الفعل مباشرة.

When the object is a pronoun, we follow this word order.

عندما يكون المفعول ضميرًا، فيجب أن يأتي بين الفعل وحرف الجر

I **filled** it **in** before I left. (it is the object; it is a pronoun)

لاحظ معاني الأفعال الاصطلاحية الآتية:

fill in	complete	يكمل - يملأ (استمارة)
wake up	stop sleeping	يستيقظ
pick up	learn	يتعلم
see off	say goodbye to somebody leaving	يودع
figure out	discover	يكتشف
put away	put something in its place	يضع الشيء في مكانه
drop off	take somebody to a place	يوصل شخصًا إلى مكان
look up	find out something	يبحث عن - يعرف

Help your child identify phrasal verbs.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الأفعال الاصطلاحية.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Could you fill .... this form, please?
   a) in b) out c) of d) on
2. I asked my dad to .... me up every day.
   a) look b) wake c) shut d) put
3. We .... a lot of lessons at school.
   a) pick up b) see off c) look up d) put away
4. My friends .... me off at the airport last week.
   a) wanted b) learned c) watched d) saw
5. The clever student figured the answer .... quickly.
   a) in b) at c) out d) of
6. The room was messy so I put everything ....
   a) way b) away c) ways d) a way
7. If you don't know the meaning of a difficult word, ... in a dictionary.
   a) look it up b) look up it c) fill it in d) fill in it
8. My dad always .... me off at my school.
   a) makes b) looks c) drops d) fills

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. My mom saw me .... (of) at the airport.
2. What information did you look .... (on)?
3. What language did you .... (pack) up?
4. Did you put .... (way) your shoes?
5. I filled .... (on) an application form.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What did Lucy decide to do? ....
2. What country did they decide to go to first? ....
3. What did Lucy use to move? ....
4. What kinds of transportation do they use? ....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

woke - riad - food - picked - looked

My favorite place in Morocco was Marrakech. I loved the 1)................ there. We stayed at a 2)................, which is a special house in Morocco There was a swimming pool, and my mom 3)................ me up early, so I could swim every day. Moroccans speak French, so I 4)................ up a lot of French phrases while I was there.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We filled .... the forms when we arrived
   a) in b) on c) at d) of
2. I .... up the best places to visit on the internet
   a) saw b) looked c) filled d) dropped
3. My mom .... me up early in the morning
   a) took b) dropped c) woke d) filled
4. I picked .... a lot of French phrases while I was in Morocco
   a) of b) at c) on d) up
5. When the taxi dropped us .... at the airport, I felt a bit sad
   a) off b) in c) away d) out
6. My mom .... us off at the airport
   a) picked b) saw c) put d) woke
7. I figured the answer .... by looking online
   a) at b) on c) off d) out

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

8. It was a great trip, but I was sad to put my hiking shoes ....

a) off b) away c) at d) of

9. She saw .... her husband before he traveled.

a) on b) off c) in d) at

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hello, I'm Mazen! Last year, I went on a walking trip in Spain with my dad. Mom saw us off at the airport. When we landed, we got a bus to the Picos de Europe national park. It's very beautiful, and it was quite easy to walk. We went in June, when it wasn't too hot. We were lucky to see some beautiful birds, but we didn't know what <u>they</u> were. I figured the answer out by looking online – they were golden eagles. That was very special. We also saw some brown bears and wildcats! Luckily, they were far away! The park is famous for its wolves, but sadly, we didn't see any. It was a great trip, and I was sad to put my hiking shoes away!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. They went to Spain in ...., when it wasn't too hot.

a) July b) June c) May d) April

2. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to the ....

a) trips b) bears c) wildcats d) birds

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What's the main idea of the text? ....

4. What is the park famous for? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. the - up - <u>My dad</u> - wakes - in - morning - me - .

....

2. my clothes - <u>Mom</u> - are - and - I - putting away - .

....

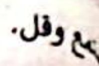
6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

A trip to the Pyramids

Guiding elements:

(last week - Giza - tourists - Sphinx - took photos)

Lesson (3) AMAZING ADVENTURES!



Listen and say.

مع وقل.



The Amazon
نهر الأمازون



The Himalayas
جبال الهيمالايا



The desert
الصحراء



The Arctic
القطب الشمالي



cooker
بوتجاز



camera
كاميرا



canoe
قارب - زورق



tent
خيمة

Vocabulary ردات

adventure	مغامرة	challenges	حديات
shade	ظل	place	كان
the same	نفس الشيء	skills	هارات
humans	البشر	oases	احات
outside	بالخارج	environment	لبيئة
landscape	منظر طبيعي	rest	يستريح
difficult	صعب	important	مهم
take photos	يلتقط صورًا	springs	نابيع مياه

Important expressions and prepositions يرات وحروف جر هامة

put up a tent	ينصب خيمة	during the day	ناء النهار
go on adventure	يقوم بمغامرة	go back	عود

Help your child identify these words.

عد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (3)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	P.P
sleep	ينام slept	slept
ride	يركب rode	ridden
take	يأخذ took	taken



Imagine an adventure. Then make notes.

Where did you go?	The Amazon
What skills did you learn?	To catch fish
Was it difficult?	No
What did you like best about the trip?	Sailing in a canoe
What were the challenges of the trip?	Dangerous animals

Listen and read.

Amazing Adventures!



Emily went to the Amazon because she wanted to learn more about what humans are doing to the environment. She learned how to canoe. She also learned how to take better photos. Her biggest challenge was that it was often too hot to sleep.

Tom went to the Himalayas because he has always been interested in that part of the world. He learned how to cook outside. He also learned how to put up a tent that was big enough for four people.

ذهبت إميلي إلى منطقة الأمازون لأنها أرادت معرفة المزيد حول ما يفعله البشر بالبيئة. لقد تعلمت كيفية التجديف بقارب الكانو. وتعلمت أيضًا كيفية التقاط صور أفضل. كان التحدي الأكبر الذي واجهته هو أن الجو حار جدًا لدرجة أنها لا تستطيع النوم.

ذهب توم إلى جبال الهيمالايا لأنه كان دائمًا مهتمًا بهذا الجزء من العالم. لقد تعلم كيف يطبخ في الخارج. وتعلم أيضًا كيفية نصب خيمة كبيرة تكفي لأربعة أشخاص.

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

challenges - Himalayas - fine - finest - skills

Omar : Hi, Adel. How are you?
Adel : Hi, Omar. I'm 1) ...., thanks.
Omar : Where did you go last week?
Adel : I went on a trip to the 2) ....
Omar : What 3) .... did you learn?
Adel : I learned to climb the mountains.
Omar : What were the 4) .... of the trip?
Adel : The Himalayas are steep and the weather is very cold.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

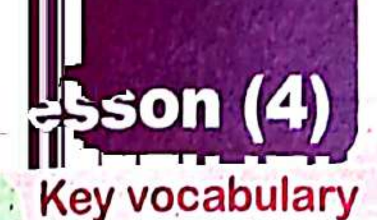
1. I went on a trip to the .... River.
   a) Himalayas b) Desert c) Arctic d) Amazon
2. We .... some photos with our cameras.
   a) went b) took c) filled d) woke
3. We .... up some tents next to the mountains.
   a) put b) stay c) wake d) figure
4. We took a .... on the river.
   a) tent b) canoe c) car d) bus
5. Would you like to go .... to the same place?
   a) pack b) back c) pick d) beak

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. use - a - We - make - food - to - cooker - .
   ....
2. to - Would - you - like - go - an adventure - on - ?
   ....
3. cold - the - It's - in - very - Arctic - .
   ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



OMAR HEGAZY

Key vocabulary
كلمات أساسية

banker	موظف بنك - مصرفي	motorbike	دراجة نارية
crutch	عكاز	hold his breath	يحبس أنفاسه
fins	زعانف	inspire	يلهم

Extra vocabulary
كلمات إضافية

interesting	مثير / شيق	rock climbing	تسلق الصخور
inspiring	ملهم	snorkeling	الغطس بأنبوب التنفس
Sinai Peninsula	شبه جزيرة سيناء	wheelchair	كرسي متحرك
athlete	لاعب رياضي	active	نشيط
disabled	عاجز	disabilities	إعاقات
female	أنثى	incredible	لا يصدق
part	جزء	Lebanon	لبنان
diver	غواص	fitness	اللياقة البدنية

Definitions
تعريفات

break a world record — يحطم الرقم القياسي العالمي

to do something better than anybody else in the world

follow (your) dreams — تتبع أحلامك

to do something in life that you really want to do

a world-record-holding athlete — لاعب يحمل رقم قياسي عالمي

an athlete who has broken a world record

fins long rubber things to put on your feet to help you swim faster — زعانف

crutch something to put under your arm to help you walk better — عكاز

inspire to motivate and guide others — يلهم

banker someone who works in a bank — مصرفي - موظف بنك

hold your breath — تحبس أنفاسك

keep your breath inside your chest without breathing out

motorbike a type of transportation on two wheels, with an engine — دراجه نارية

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
achieve	يحقق - ينجز	achieved	achieved
remove	يزيل	removed	removed
train	يتدرب	trained	trained
motivate	يحفز	motivated	motivated
cycle	يركب دراجة	cycled	cycled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
show	يعرض - يبين	showed	shown
tell	يخبر	told	told
break	يكسر - يحطم	broke	broken
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
give	يعطي	gave	given
hold	يمسك	held	held
become	يصبح	became	become
begin	يبدأ	began	begun

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

work as + وظيفة	يعمل كـ	work hard	يعمل بجد
go well	تسير على ما يرام	keep fit	يحافظ على لياقته البدنية
on his motorbike	على دراجته النارية	had an accident	تعرض لحادث
feel free	يشعر بحرية	become stronger	يصبح أكثر قوة
for a distance of	لمسافة تبلغ	put on	يرتدي
break the world record	يحطم الرقم القياسي	the Aqaba Gulf	خليج العقبة
in eight hours	في 8 ساعات	give talks	يلقي محاضرات
all around the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم	as well as	بالإضافة إلى

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (4)

Listen and read.

Omar Hegazy is a very interesting man who is a **world-record-holding athlete**. He shows that when you work hard, you can achieve amazing things. He is very inspiring, but his life has not always been easy.



عمر حجازي رجل مثير للاهتمام للغاية وهو رياضي يحمل أرقامًا قياسية عالمية. لقد أظهر أنه عندما تعمل بجد، يمكنك تحقيق أشياء مذهلة. إنه ملهم للغاية، لكن حياته لم تكن دائمًا سهلة.

At the age of 25, Omar's life was going well. He had a good job as a **banker** in the Sinai Peninsula, and he was very active. He enjoyed sports, including rock climbing, snorkeling, and keeping fit.

في سن الخامسة والعشرين، كانت حياة عمر تسير على ما يرام. كان لديه وظيفة جيدة كمصرفي في شبه جزيرة سيناء، وكان نشطًا للغاية. كان يستمتع بالرياضة، بما في ذلك تسلق الصخور والغطس والحفاظ على لياقته البدنية.

One day, he was traveling along the road on his motorbike when he had an accident. The doctors told him that, unfortunately, they had to remove part of his leg. Omar had to learn to use a crutch, and then a wheelchair. Omar learned about two important athletes who are also disabled. The first athlete is Dareen Barbar, a female athlete from Lebanon who has only one leg. The second person to inspire Omar is Faisal Al-Mosawi, who is a wheelchair diver.

في أحد الأيام، كان يقود دراجته النارية على الطريق عندما تعرض لحادث. أخبره الأطباء أنهم للأسف اضطروا إلى إزالة جزء من ساقه. كان على عمر أن يتعلم استخدام العكاز، ثم الكرسي المتحرك. وعرف عمر عن اثنين من الرياضيين المهمين الذين يعانون من إعاقة أيضًا. اللاعبة الأولى هي دارين بربر، وهي رياضية من لبنان ولديها ساق واحدة فقط. الشخص الثاني الذي ألهم عمر هو فيصل الموسوي، وهو غواص على كرسي متحرك.

So, Omar began swimming. In the water, he felt free and his body moved easily. Slowly, Omar became stronger, and he trained hard. He decided that he wanted to **break a world record**, too. Omar tried to see if he could **hold his breath** underwater longer than anybody else.

لذلك بدأ عمر السباحة في الماء، شعر بالحرية وتحرك جسده بسهولة. ببطء، أصبح عمر أقوى، وتدرب بجد. لقد قرر أنه يريد تحطيم رقم قياسي عالمي أيضًا. حاول عمر أن يرى ما إذا كان يستطيع حبس أنفاسه تحت الماء لفترة أطول من أي شخص آخر.

Omar trained hard, and in 2022, he could swim underwater for a distance of 56.48 meters! He then put on fins and swam for longer – 76.7 meters! He broke world records with both these swims. Since these incredible swims, Omar has also swum across the Aqaba Gulf. He completed the swim in eight hours! As well as this, Omar cycled from Taba in the Sinai Peninsula to the Egyptian Pyramids in Giza. He never stops!

تدرب عمر بجد، وفي عام 2022، تمكن من السباحة تحت الماء لمسافة 56.48 مترًا! ثم ارتدى الزعانف وسبح لفترة أطول – 76.7 مترًا! لقد حطم الأرقام القياسية العالمية في كلتا السباحتين. ومنذ هذه السباحة الرائعة، سبح عمر أيضًا عبر خليج العقبة. أكمل السباحة في ثماني ساعات! بالإضافة إلى ذلك، سافر عمر بالدراجة من طابا في شبه جزيرة سيناء إلى الأهرامات المصرية في الجيزة. إنه لا يتوقف أبدًا!

Today, Omar Hegazy is a very happy man, and gives talks to **inspire** others. He wants to help other people with disabilities **follow their dreams** and believe they can do anything.

اليوم عمر حجازي رجل سعيد للغاية، ويلقي المحاضرات لإلهام الآخرين. إنه يريد مساعدة الأشخاص ذوي الهمم الآخرين على ملاحقة أحلامهم والاعتقاد بأنهم يستطيعون فعل أي شيء.

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Omar Hegazy worked in a restaurant. ☐
2. Omar had a terrible accident on his motorbike. ☐
3. Omar had to remove part of his arm. ☐
4. Omar now helps people with disabilities to achieve their dreams. ☐

2 Read again and answer.

1. What sport does Omar do?

....

2. Which world records did Omar break?

....

Lesson (4)

Listen and read.

Faisal Al-Mosawi



In 2005, Faisal Al-Mosawi was a talented football player. However, after a car accident he couldn't walk and he had to use a wheelchair. He was 20 years old. Two years after his accident, Faisal decided to learn a new skill. He wanted a challenge. So in 2009, he learned scuba diving and he decided to become the fastest diver in the world. In 2018, he broke the world record and became the fastest person to scuba dive 10 km, in five hours and 24 minutes. He broke a record that was set in 2011 by Christopher Healey, a scuba diver with no disability. Today, Faisal continues to scuba dive and he inspires young people by giving talks. Faisal wants to show the world that people with disabilities can be as successful as people with no disabilities.

في عام 2005، كان فيصل الموسوي لاعب كرة قدم موهوب. ومع ذلك، بعد تعرضه لحادث سيارة، لم يتمكن من المشي واضطر إلى استخدام كرسي متحرك. كان عمره 20 عامًا. بعد عامين من الحادث، قرر فيصل أن يتعلم مهارة جديدة. أراد التحدي. لذلك في عام 2009، تعلم الغوص وقرر أن يصبح أسرع غواص في العالم. وفي عام 2018، حطم الرقم القياسي العالمي وأصبح أسرع شخص يغوص مسافة 10 كيلومترات، في خمس ساعات و24 دقيقة. وحطم الرقم القياسي الذي سجله في عام 2011 كريستوفر هيلي، وهو غواص لا يعاني من أي إعاقة. واليوم، يواصل فيصل ممارسة رياضة الغوص ويلهم الشباب من خلال إلقاء المحاضرات. يريد فيصل أن يبين للعالم أن الأشخاص ذوي الإعاقة يمكن أن يكونوا ناجحين مثل الأشخاص غير ذوي الإعاقة.

- **Read again and answer.**

1. What did Faisal have to use after the accident?

....

2. When did Faisal decide to learn a new skill?

....

3. What did he learn in 2009?

....

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who is the text about?

....

2. What does he do?

....

3. What does he show when he works hard?

....

4. Was his life easy?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

lazy - leg - active - banker - motorbike

At the age of 25, Omar's life was going well. He had a good job as a 1)........................ in the Sinai Peninsula, and he was very 2)............................. He enjoyed sports, including rock climbing, snorkeling, and keeping fit. One day, he was traveling along the road on his 3)........................ when he had a accident. The doctors told him that, unfortunately, they had to remove par of his 4)........................

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When you work hard, you can .... amazing things
   a) remove b) achieve c) train d) cycle
2. At the age of 25, Omar worked .... a banker
   a) as b) like c) same d) similar
3. Omar was travelling along the road on his ....
   a) canoe b) boat c) ship d) motorbike

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (4)

4. The doctor removed part of Omar's leg, so he had to use a ....

a) watch b) clock c) bike d) crutch

5. Omar decided that he wanted to .... a world record.

a) break b) protect c) remove d) give

6. Omar tried to see if he could .... his breath underwater.

a) catch b) make c) break d) hold

7. He put .... fins and swam for 76.7 meters!

a) in b) out c) on d) off

8. Omar Hegazy helps people with disabilities .... their dreams.

a) kill b) follow c) stop d) hold

9. Omar Hegazy gives talks to .... others.

a) stop b) hate c) hit d) inspire

10. Taba is in the .... Peninsula in Egypt.

a) Arabian b) Sinai c) Cairo d) Siwa

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. a crutch - had to - <u>Omar Hegazy</u> - use - the accident - after - .

....

2. a banker - <u>Omar Hegazy</u> - had - job - a good - as - .

....

3. hours - eight - <u>He</u> - completed - the swim - in - .

....

4. remove - had - <u>Omar</u> - to - part of - leg - his - .

....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

At the age of 25, Omar was a banker. He was doing well at work, and was enjoying his life. Then he had an accident. He was taken to hospital, where the doctors removed part of his leg. Then, Omar heard about two disabled athletes, and he wanted to be like them. He started training hard and working on his fitness. Amazingly, he broke a world record in holding his breath underwater. Now, Omar motivates people all around the world.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Omar was .... his life
   a) hating b) disliking c) enjoying d) losing
2. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ....
   a) two athletes b) Omar c) doctors d) sports

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did the doctors do to Omar?

....

4. What was amazing about Omar?

....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Omar Hegazy

Guiding elements:

(athlete - banker - accident - a world record)

....

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (5) LANGUAGE

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

course	منهج دراسي - دورة	spacesuit	بدلة فضائية
model spaceship	مجسم سفينة فضاء	mission	مهمة
attached to	مرتبط بـ - معلق بـ	cleaning wipes	مناديل مبللة للتنظيف
marathon	مارثون (سباق)	astronaut	رائد فضاء

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

career	مهنة	physically strong	قوي بدنيًا	regularly	بانتظام
suitcase	حقيبة سفر	science	علوم	packed	معبأ
experience	تجربة - خبرة	sleeping bags	أكياس النوم	organized	مُنظّم
drawers	أدراج	liquids	سوائل	weak	ضعيف
gravity	الجاذبية	bath	بانيو - حوض استحمام	wall	حائط
shower	دش - حمام	tidy	مرتب	team	فريق

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة — **Irregular verbs** أفعال غير منتظمة

		Past	P.P	Present		Past	P.P
fix	يصلح	fixed	fixed	choose	يختار	chose	chosen
test	يختبر	tested	tested	teach	يعلم	taught	taught
heat up	يسخن	heated up	heated up	give	يعطي	gave	given
pack	يحزم الحقائب	packed	packed	swim	يسبح	swam	swum
check	يفحص	checked	checked	sleep	ينام	slept	slept
float	يطفو	floated	floated	wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
store	يخزن	stored	stored	keep	يحفظ	kept	kept

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions ـبيرات وحروف جر هامة

That's so cool!	هذا رائع جدًا!	at university	ـي الجامعة
training course	دورة تدريبية	do experiments	ـجري تجارب
give first aid	يقوم بعمل إسعافات أولية	in case	ـي حالة
get sick	يمرض	at mealtimes	ـي وقت تناول الطعام
keep fit	يحافظ على لياقته البدنية	a special area	ـنطقة خاصة
traveling into space	السفر للفضاء		

do a two-year astronaut course ـلقي دورة تدريبية لمدة عامين ليصبح رائد فضاء

Study the following

1. To become an astronaut, you need to study science first.
ـي تصبح رائد فضاء، عليك أن تدرس العلوم أولًا.
2. In the training course, you learn first aid. ـعلم في الدورة التدريبية الإسعافات الأولية.
3. The sleeping bags are attached to the wall. ـياس النوم معلقة على الحائط.
4. On the spaceship, there isn't a shower. ـى متن سفينة الفضاء، لا يوجد دش.

Listen and read.

It's an astronaut's life

Would you like to be an astronaut? It's a great career, but you need work very hard. First of all, you should study science at school and university. After this, you need to do a difficult, two-year astronaut **cours** If you are chosen to join the next space trip, you are very lucky!

ـترغب في أن تكون رائد فضاء؟ إنها مهنة رائعة، لكن عليك أن تعمل بجد. في البداية، يجب عليك دراسة العلوم في المدرسة ـجامعة. بعد ذلك، عليك أن تأخذ دورة صعبة لمدة عامين لرواد الفضاء. إذا تم اختيارك للانضمام إلى رحلة الفضاء القادمة، فأنت ـظوظ جدًا!

In the training course, a new astronaut is taught many things by th teachers. They are taught how to fix a spaceship, and how to do experiments. The students are shown how to give first aid, too, in case someone becomes sick in space.

ـلدورة التدريبية، يتعلم رائد الفضاء الجديد أشياء كثيرة على يد معلميه. يتم تعليمهم كيفية إصلاح سفينة الفضاء وكيفية إجراء ـتجارب. ويوضح للطلاب كيفية تقديم الإسعافات الأولية أيضًا في حالة مرض شخص ما في الفضاء.

Help your child identify these words.
ـطفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Astronauts need to be physically strong. They are regularly tested by doctors for their fitness. They are also usually asked to swim three lengths in their **spacesuits** in a swimming pool. Often, they are asked to go into a **model spaceship**. There, they are checked to see if they will be well in the spaceship. If they get sick, they cannot make the trip.

يجب أن يكون رواد الفضاء أقوياء بدنيًا. يتم اختبارهم بانتظام من قبل الأطباء للتأكد من لياقتهم البدنية. يُطلب منهم أيضًا عادةً السباحة ثلاثة أطوال ببدلاتهم الفضائية في حوض السباحة. في كثير من الأحيان، يطلب منهم الذهاب إلى مجسم سفينة الفضاء. هناك، يتم فحصهم لمعرفة هل سيكونون بصحة جيدة في سفينة الفضاء. إذا مرضوا، فلن يتمكنوا من القيام بالرحلة.

When the astronauts are on their **mission**, their things are stored safely on the spaceship while they are still on Earth. Their sleeping bags are **attached** to a wall so they don't float around when they sleep. This is because there's less gravity than on Earth. Food is put in drawers so it doesn't move around, too. See how the fruit is floating in the photo of the spaceship! At mealtimes, the food is heated up by the astronauts. The astronauts then eat from special bags, not from plates. This stops the food from floating away.

عندما يكون رواد الفضاء في مهمتهم، يتم تخزين أغراضهم بأمان على سفينة الفضاء أثناء وجودهم على الأرض. تكون أكياس نومهم معلقة على الحائط حتى لا يسبحون أثناء نومهم. هذا لأن الجاذبية أقل من الجاذبية الموجودة على الأرض. يتم وضع الطعام في الأدراج حتى لا يتحرك أيضًا. شاهد كيف تسبح الفاكهة في صورة سفينة الفضاء! وفي أوقات الوجبات، يقوم رواد الفضاء بتسخين الطعام. ثم يأكل رواد الفضاء في أكياس خاصة، وليس في أطباق. وهذا يمنع الطعام من الطفو بعيدًا.

On the spaceship, it's important to keep everything clean. The team can't use cleaning liquids for cleaning as there's less gravity, so they use **cleaning wipes**. There's no shower or bath in the spaceship, so astronauts wash themselves with cleaning wipes, too. The astronauts sometimes wear the same clothes for a long time in the spaceship. Often, dirty clothes are then thrown away.

على متن سفينة الفضاء، من المهم الحفاظ على نظافة كل شيء. لا يمكن للفريق استخدام سوائل التنظيف للتنظيف نظرًا لقلة الجاذبية، لذلك يستخدمون مناديل التنظيف. لا يوجد دش أو حوض استحمام في سفينة الفضاء، لذلك يغسل رواد الفضاء أنفسهم بمناديل التنظيف أيضًا. يرتدي رواد الفضاء أحيانًا نفس الملابس لفترة طويلة في سفينة الفضاء. وفي كثير من الأحيان، يتم التخلص من الملابس المتسخة.


An astronaut trying to eat fruit in space

The team needs to keep fit in space, so their bodies don't become weak. To do this, they run in a special area of the spaceship. Did you know that one astronaut, Sunita Williams, ran the Boston **Marathon** while she was in space in 2007? That's so cool!

يحتاج الفريق إلى الحفاظ على لياقته في الفضاء، حتى لا تضعف أجسادهم. للقيام بذلك، يركضون في منطقة خاصة من سفينة الفضاء. هل تعلم أن رائدة الفضاء سونيتا ويليامز شاركت في ماراثون بوسطن أثناء وجودها في الفضاء عام 2007؟ هذا رائع جدا!

So, what do you think? Would you like an astronaut's life? Are you tidy and organized? Is your suitcase packed for space? I think we can all see that traveling into space would be an amazing experience, but is it for you?

ما رأيك؟ هل ترغب في حياة رائد فضاء؟ هل أنت مرتب ومنظم؟ هل حقيبتك معدة للفضاء؟ أعتقد أننا جميعًا نستطيع أن نرى أن السفر إلى الفضاء سيكون تجربة مذهلة، ولكن هل هو مناسب لك؟



Language

Present Simple Passive

المبني للمجهول في المضارع البسيط

Active المعلوم

In active sentences, we focus on the **doer** of the action (the person doing the action).

صيغة المبني للمعلوم، نركز على فاعل الحدث.

e.g. **We** study science at school and university.

Passive المبني للمجهول

In passive sentences, we focus on the **object** (the person/thing receiving the action).

في صيغة المبني للمجهول، نركز على المفعول به (سواء كان شخصًا أو شيئًا).

e.g. **Astronauts** are asked to swim three lengths in their spacesuits.

The doer can be included in the sentence, using by, or it can be left out.

يمكن أن يستخدم الفاعل في نهاية الجملة مع كلمة by أو يمكن حذفه.

e.g. The **food** is heated up (by the astronauts).

e.g. **Astronauts' bags** are stored on the spaceship.

Help your child learn the present simple passive.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم المبني للمجهول في المضارع البسيط.

	Active صيغة المبني للمعلوم	**Passive** صيغة المبني للمجهول
Affirmative الإثبات	I - We - You - They - اسم جمع + inf. He - She - It - اسم مفرد + (v + s, es, ies) **e.g.** We study science at school. **e.g.** She eats apples every week.	Object (مفعول) + am / is / are + P.P. **e.g.** Science is studied at school. **e.g.** Apples are eaten every week.
Negative النفي	I - We - You - They - اسم جمع + don't + inf. He - She - It - اسم مفرد + doesn't + inf. **e.g.** I don't study French. **e.g.** Ali doesn't eat oranges.	Object (مفعول) + am / is / are + not + P.P. **e.g.** French isn't studied by him. **e.g.** Oranges aren't eaten by Ali.
Yes / No question السؤال بـ هل	Do + (I - we - you - they) + inf. ....? Does + (he - she - it) + inf. ...? **e.g.** Do you watch TV? **e.g.** Does Mona read the books?	Am / Is / Are + Object (مفعول) + P.P. ? **e.g.** Is TV watched by you? **e.g.** Are the books read by Mona?
	Q.W + do + (I - we - you - they) + inf. ..? Q.W + does + (he - she - it) + inf. ...? **e.g.** Where do you buy meat? **e.g.** How does she make clothes?	Q.W + am / is / are + Object (مفعول) + P.P.? **e.g.** Where is meat bought by you? **e.g.** How are clothes made by her?



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. New astronauts .... many things by their teachers.
   a) teaches b) taught c) are taught d) is teaching
2. If you .... to join the next space trip, you are very lucky.
   a) have chosen b) are chosen c) choose d) chose

3. You .... how to give firs
   a) are shown   b) shows   c) has shown   d) is shown
4. Astronauts .... by doctors for their fitn
   a) will test   b) test   c) are testing   d) are tested
5. Astronauts .... to swim three lengths in their spacesui
   a swimming pool.
   a) ask   b) are asking   c) asks   d) are asked
6. Astronauts .... to see if they will be well in the space
   a) are checked   b) is checked   c) was checked   d) are check
7. Astronauts' things .... safely on the spaceship while they
   still on Earth.
   a) is stored   b) was stored   c) are stored   d) store
8. Their sleeping bags .... to a wall, so they don't float aro
   a) is attaching   b) are attaching   c) will attach   d) are attach
9. Food .... in drawers, so it doesn't move aro
   a) is put   b) are put   c) will put   d) puts
10. At mealtimes, the food .... by the astrona
   a) is heating   b) is heated   c) heats   d) has heate

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between bracke

1. Farmers .... (are grown) cotton in Egy
2. Often, dirty clothes .... (throw) aw
3. Is your suitcase .... (packing) for spa
4. Fruit is .... (eat) by astrona
5. The lessons .... (don't) studied by the lazy stude
6. The spaceship .... (clean) by astrona

Help your child deal with such questions.

طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

What would you like to be?

....

What do you need to be an astronaut?

....

What subject should you study to be an astronaut?

....

How long is the course you need to be an astronaut?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

ship - trip - spacesuits - fitness - spaceship

Astronauts need to be physically strong. They are regularly tested by ctors for their 1)........................ They are also usually asked to swim three gths in their 2)........................ in a swimming pool. Often, they are asked to into a model 3)........................ There, they are checked to see if they will be ll in the spaceship. If they get sick, they cannot make the 4)........................

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

The astronauts .... by their teachers.

a) are teaching b) teaches c) teach d) are taught

We.. science at school and university.

a) study b) studies c) are studied d) has studied

The food .... up by the astronauts.

a) heat b) heats c) is heated d) has heated

How is the spaceship .... ?

a) cleaned b) cleaning c) cleans d) clean

5. The apples .... eaten by
   a) doesn't   b) isn't   c) aren't   d) don't
6. Cotton.. by a lot of farme
   a) grows   b) is grown   c) are grown   d) is growing

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

When the astronauts are on their mission, their things are stored safely on the spaceship while they are still on Earth. Their sleeping bags are attached to a wall so they don't float around when they sleep. This is because there's less gravity than on Earth. Food is put in drawers so it doesn't move around, too. At mealtimes, the food is heated up by the astronauts. The astronauts then eat from special bags, not from plates. This stops the food from floating away.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "their" refers to the ....
   a) astronauts   b) missions   c) bags   d) drawers
2. The astronauts' sleeping bags are attached to a ....
   a) drawer   b) wall   c) photo   d) bag

B) Answer the following questions.

3. When is the food heated by the astronauts? ....
4. Why do the astronauts eat from special bags, not from plates? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. attached to - bags - The sleeping - are - a wall - .

....

2. an astronaut - Would - you - be - to - like - ?

....

3. space - fit - The team - needs - to keep - in - .

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
عليك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (6) WRITING: A BIOGRAPHY

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

biography	سيرة ذاتية	base camp	المعسكر الرئيسي
avalanche	انهيار جليدي	ambitious	شخص طموح

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

young woman	شابة	mountain	جبل
Australian	أسترالي	finally	في النهاية
adventure	مغامرة	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
adventurer	شخص مغامر	rest	يرتاح
problems	مشاكل	earthquake	زلزال
trips	رحلات	sadly	من المؤسف
top	قمة	equipment	معدات

Definitions تعريفات

	when a lot of snow falls down a mountain	انهيار جليدي
ambitious	wanting to be successful	طموح
base camp	a place where people climbing a mountain can rest	المعسكر الرئيسي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
climb	يتسلق	climbed	climbed
cross	يعبر	crossed	crossed
decide	يقرر	decided	decided
continue	يستمر	continued	continued

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
take	يأخذ	took	taken
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
make	يصنع / يعمل	made	made
write	يكتب	wrote	written

Important expressions and prepositions ت وحروف جر هامة

mountaineering guide	مرشد لتسلق الجبال	at the age of	مر
The Kokoda Track	طريق كوكودا "غينيا"	Papua New Guinea	بابوا غينيا الجديدة
Mount Kilimanjaro	جبل كليمنجارو	get to	إلى
achieve her dream	تحقق حلمها	Mount Everest	يفرست

Seqnencing words and phrases ت وكلمات تفيد تسلسل الأحداث

First of all	أولًا	Next	
After that	بعد ذلك	Finally	النهاية



When you write a biography, you should: عندما تكتب سيرة ذاتية عن شخص ما، ينبغي أن:

1. Find facts about the person. تجد حقائق عن الشخص.
2. Write a short first paragraph to introduce why the person is famous.
   تكتب أول فقرة قصيرة تذكر فيها لماذا هذا الشخص مشهور.
3. Write key events in chronological (time) order. Use sequencing words.
   تكتب الأحداث الرئيسية في ترتيب زمني. وتستخدم الكلمات الدالة على تسلسل الأحداث.
4. Write in the past simple tense because you are describing things which have already happened.
   تكتب في زمن الماضي البسيط لأنك تصف أشياء حدثت بالفعل.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

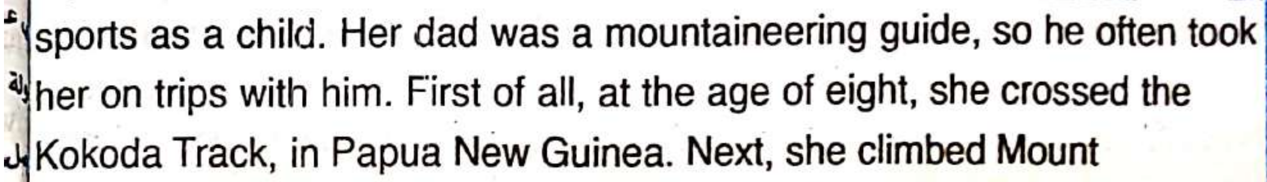
Lesson (6)

Listen and read.

Alyssa Azar: A biography

Alyssa Azar is an amazing young woman, and one of Australia's most **ambitious** adventurers. She's the youngest Australian to climb Mount Everest.

أليسا أزار شابة مذهلة، وواحدة من أكثر المغامرات الأستراليات طموحًا. إنها أصغر أسترالية تتسلق جبل إيفرست.



Alyssa is from Toowoomba, Australia. She loved sports as a child. Her dad was a mountaineering guide, so he often took her on trips with him. First of all, at the age of eight, she crossed the Kokoda Track, in Papua New Guinea. Next, she climbed Mount Kilimanjaro when she was 14. After that, she decided to climb Mount Everest, and her parents helped her.

أليسا من توومبا، أستراليا. كانت تحب الرياضة عندما كانت طفلة. كان والدها مرشدًا لتسلق الجبال، لذلك كان يصطحبها معه في كثير من الأحيان. أولاً، في سن الثامنة، عبرت مسار كوكودا، في بابوا غينيا الجديدة. بعد ذلك، تسلقت جبل كليمنجارو عندما كانت في الرابعة عشرة من عمرها. وبعد ذلك، قررت تسلق جبل إيفرست، وساعدها والداها.

Alyssa trained hard, then she bought the correct equipment for climbing Everest. However, it was not very easy to climb the world's highest mountain. In 2014, and again in 2015, she got to the **base camp** at Everest. Unfortunately, there were problems. In 2014, there was an **avalanche**, and in 2015, there was an earthquake. Sadly, she couldn't continue to the top.

تدربت أليسا بجد، ثم اشترت المعدات المناسبة لتسلق جبل إيفرست. ومع ذلك، لم يكن من السهل جدًا تسلق أعلى جبل في العالم. في عام 2014، ومرة أخرى في عام 2015، وصلت إلى المعسكر الرئيسي في جبل إيفرست. لسوء الحظ، كانت هناك مشاكل. في عام 2014، حدث انهيار جليدي، وفي عام 2015، حدث زلزال. ومن المؤسف أنها لم تتمكن من الاستمرار إلى القمة.

Finally, in 2016, Alyssa made it to the top of Everest. She was 19 years old. Alyssa has written a book about her adventures, called *The Girl Who Climbed Everest*. In the book, she describes the hard work that helped her achieve her dream.

وأخيراً، في عام 2016، وصلت أليسا إلى قمة إيفرست. كانت تبلغ من العمر 19 عامًا. كتبت أليسا كتابًا عن مغامراتها بعنوان "الفتاة التي تسلقت جبل إيفرست". وتصف في الكتاب العمل الجاد الذي ساعدها في تحقيق حلمها.



Listen and read.

Matthieu Tordeur is a world-record-holding explorer. At the age of 27 years and 40 days, he became the youngest person to ski to the South Pole in Antarctica, alone, and without any help.

ماثيو توردور هو مستكشف يحمل الرقم القياسي العالمي. وعندما كان عمره 27 عامًا و40 يومًا، أصبح أصغر شخص يتزلج إلى القطب الجنوبي في القارة القطبية الجنوبية، بمفرده، ودون أي مساعدة.

Matthieu was born in Rouen in France on 4 December, 1991. As a young man, Matthieu was inspired by famous explore like Ranulph Fiennes, Ben Saunders, and Jean-Louis Étienne. After finishing h education, Matthieu went on many journeys across deserts, mountains, and sno He cycled across Europe and China, and he sailed across the Atlantic Ocean. The he decided to ski to the South Pole.

د ماثيو في روان بفرنسا في 4 ديسمبر 1991. عندما كان شابًا، استوحى ماثيو إلهامه من المستكشفين المشهورين مثل رانولف فينيس، ن سوندرز، وجان لويس إتيان. بعد الانتهاء من تعليمه، ذهب ماثيو في العديد من الرحلات عبر الصحاري والجبال والجليد. ركب اجته عبر أوروبا والصين، وأبحر عبر المحيط الأطلسي. ثم قرر التزلج إلى القطب الجنوبي.

First of all, he spent two years training in Greenland and northern Norwa After that, he did six marathons across the Sahara Desert, one after the other, whic was a total of 250 kilometers. He had to carry his food and water in backpacks. Nex Matthieu spent months planning his route. He looked up the information he neede and bought his equipment. He wanted to do his adventure alone and he knew tha was going to be a big challenge.

ي البداية، أمضى عامين في التدريب في جرينلاند وشمال النرويج. بعد ذلك، شارك في ستة سباقات ماراثون عبر الصحراء الكبرى، واحد تلو الآخر، بمجموع 250 كيلومترا. كان عليه أن يحمل طعامه ومياهه في حقائب الظهر. بعد ذلك، قضى ماثيو أشهرًا في التخطيط مساره. بحث عن المعلومات التي يحتاجها واشترى معداته. لقد أراد أن يقوم بمغامرته بمفرده وكان يعلم أن ذلك سيكون تحديًا كبيرًا.

Finally, on 13 January, 2019, Matthieu arrived at the South Pole after a journe of 51 days and a distance of 1,230 kilometers. Sometimes the temperatures wer as low as -30°C. He skied all the way and he pulled 115 kg of equipment. Matthie wrote a book about his adventures and he made a television program about it. An since then, he has broken more records, written more books, and had many mor adventures.

أخيرًا، في 13 يناير 2019، وصل ماثيو إلى القطب الجنوبي بعد رحلة استغرقت 51 يومًا ومسافة 1230 كيلومترًا. في بعض الأحيان كانت جات الحرارة منخفضة تصل إلى 30- درجة مئوية. لقد تزلج على طول الطريق وسحب 115 كجم من المعدات. كتب ماثيو كتابًا عن مغامراته قدم برنامجًا تلفزيونيًا عنها. ومنذ ذلك الحين، حطم المزيد من الأرقام القياسية، وكتب المزيد من الكتب، وقام بالعديد من المغامرات.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who is Alyssa Azar?

....

2. What's her nationality?

....

3. What mountain did she climb?

....

4. What was her dad's job?

....

Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

climb - Everest - play - Where - mountains

Salma : Hi Huda. Do you know Alyssa Azar?

Huda : Hi Salma. Yes. I do.

Salma : 1) .... is she from?

Huda : She's from Australia.

Salma : What's her favorite hobby?

Huda : Her favorite hobby is climbing 2) ....

Salma : What mountains did she 3) ....?

Huda : She climbed Mount Kilimanjaro and Mount 4) ....

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Alyssa was a very .... adventurer. She wants to be successful.

   a) tired b) ambitious c) lazy d) noisy

2. Alyssa .... Mount Kilimanjaro at the age of 14.

   a) carved b) crossed c) climbed d) decided

3. Alyssa .... hard to climb Mount Everest
   a) bought b) decided c) trained d) made
4. In 2015, she .... to the base camp
   a) reached b) arrived c) made d) got
5. A/An .... is when a lot of snow falls down a mountain
   a) avalanche b) earthquake c) flood d) drought
6. Alyssa wrote a book about the hard work that helped her ... her dream
   a) achieve b) kill c) cross d) climb

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Alyssa is from Toowoomba, Australia. She loved sports as a child. Her dad was a mountaineering guide, so he often took her on trips with him. First of all, at the age of eight, she crossed the Kokoda Track, in Papua New Guinea. Next, she climbed Mount Kilimanjaro when she was 14. After that, she decided to climb Mount Everest, and her parents helped her. Finally, in 2016, she climbed Mount Everest. She wrote a book about her adventures.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined pronoun " Her" refers to ....
   a) Alyssa b) Toowoomba c) trip d) track
2. Alyssa's dad was a mountaineering ....
   a) doctor b) guide c) engineer d) artist

B) Answer the following questions.

3. When did Alyssa climb Mount Kilimanjaro? ....
4. What did Alyssa do in 2016? ....

5 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

A biography about Alyssa Azar

Guiding elements:

(Australia - ambitious - sports - climbed - a book)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Lesson (7) STORY: THE TRAVELERS AND THE WOLF

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

branch	غصن	realize	يدرك - يفهم
chat	يدردش	coo	يهدل (صوت الحمام)
crack	شق - كسر	sunrise	شروق الشمس
pretend	يتظاهر	whisper	يهمس

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

deer	غزال	village	قرية	leaves	أوراق الشجر
pigeons	حمام	market	سوق	nearby	قريب
palm tree	نخلة	through	خلال	special	خاص
suddenly	فجأة	nose	أنف	dead	ميت
daughter	ابنة	backpacks	حقائب ظهر	scared	خائف
oasis	واحة	wolf	ذئب	noise	ضوضاء

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
agree	يوافق	agreed	agreed
carry	يحمل	carried	carried
eply	يرد	replied	replied
ouch	يلمس	touched	touched

rregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
grow up	يكبر	grew up	grown up
eave	يترك - يغادر	left	left
et up	يستيقظ	got up	got up
nd	يجد	found	found
ead	يقرأ	read	read
ome	يأتي	came	come
n away	يهرب	ran away	run away

p your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

the desert road	الطريق الصحراوي	ontheir backs	على ظهورهم
seem very happy	يبدو سعيدًا جدًا	after a while	بعد فترة قصيرة
indanger	في خطر	a bit hard	صعب قليلًا
a beautiful scene	منظر جميل	How nice it is!	يا له من شيء لطيف!
a lovely place	مكان رائع	onhis own	بمفرده
toohot towalk	الطقس حار جدًا لدرجة أننا لا نستطيع المشي		

Listen and read.

Three men, Amin, Ashraf, and Sultan, lived in a village. They were very good friends, and they grew up together. They studied at the same school and now worked near each other. One day, the friends decided to go to the market in the nearby town. "What time should we leave tomorrow?" asked Amin.

كان ثلاثة رجال، أمين وأشرف وسلطان، يعيشون في إحدى القرى. لقد كانوا أصدقاء جيدين جدًا، ونشأوا معًا. لقد درسوا في نفس المدرسة ويعملون الآن بالقرب من بعضهم البعض. في أحد الأيام، قرر الأصدقاء الذهاب إلى السوق في البلدة المجاورة. سأل أمين "في أي وقت يجب أن نغادر غدًا؟".

"I think we should leave before sunrise so it's not too hot to walk," said Ashraf. "I agree," said Sultan.

قال أشرف: "أعتقد أننا يجب أن نغادر قبل شروق الشمس حتى لا يكون الجو حاراً جداً عند المشي".
قال سلطان: "أنا موافق".

The men got up at 5:30 the next day, and walked together through the desert road. They carried backpacks on their backs with water and snacks. The men enjoyed **chatting** about their lives and their families.

استيقظ الرجال في الساعة 5:30 من اليوم التالي، وساروا معًا عبر الطريق الصحراوي. كانوا يحملون حقائب الظهر على ظهورهم وفيها الماء والوجبات الخفيفة. استمتع الرجال بالدردشة حول حياتهم وعائلاتهم.

"So, is your daughter, Noura, enjoying school?" asked Amin.

سأل أمين "هل تستمتع ابنتك نورا بالمدرسة؟".

"Well, she seems very happy, and she likes her teacher and her friends," replied Ashraf. "But she's finding reading difficult. I think I need to help her more."

أجاب أشرف: "حسنًا، تبدو سعيدة جدًا، وتحب معلمتها وأصدقائها. لكنها تجد صعوبة في القراءة. أعتقد أنني بحاجة لمساعدتها أكثر.

"Yes, sometimes learning is a bit hard at first," said Sultan, "I'm sure she'll achieve great things."

قال سلطان: "نعم، أحيانًا يكون التعلم صعبًا بعض الشيء في البداية. أنا متأكد من أنها ستحقق أشياء عظيمة".

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

After a while, they came to an oasis, and saw a beautiful deer with big eyes. When they got closer, the deer ran away, and there was a noise in the leaves. They saw that the deer was back with her baby. It was a beautiful scene. The men then looked up and saw pigeons in the palm trees. The pigeons cooed at each other. "How nice it is to see all these special things with my best friends!" said Amin.

وبعد فترة، وصلوا إلى واحة، ورأوا غزالاً جميلاً له عيون كبيرة. وعندما اقتربوا، هرب الغزال، وكان هناك ضجيج في أوراق الشجر. رأوا أن الغزالة عادت مع طفلها. لقد كان مشهدًا جميلًا. ثم نظر الرجال إلى أعلى ورأوا الحمام في أشجار النخيل. كان الحمام يهدل على بعضهم البعض. قال أمين "كم هو جميل أن أرى كل هذه الأشياء المميزة مع أعز أصدقائي!".

"Yes, this is a lovely place!" added Ashraf.

وأضاف أشرف"نعم، هذا مكان جميل!".

Suddenly, there was a **crack** of a **branch**. Sultan looked behind him, and then started to run back towards the village. Ashraf climbed a tree, but Amin didn't move. He **realized** he was on his own. Amin slowly turned around and saw what his friends had seen – a black wolf. He immediately fell to the ground and **pretended** to be dead. Amin didn't move. The wolf came up to him and touched his face with his nose. It whispered something in his ear, then walked back into the desert.

فجأة، كان هناك صدع في فرع. نظر سلطان خلفه، ثم بدأ بالركض عائداً نحو القرية. تسلق أشرف شجرة، لكن أمين لم يتحرك. لقد أدرك أنه كان بمفرده. استدار أمين ببطء ورأى ما شاهده أصدقاؤه – ذئبًا أسود. سقط على الفور على الأرض وتظاهر بأنه ميت. ولم يتحرك أمين. اقترب منه الذئب ولمس وجهه بأنفه. وهمس بشيء في أذنه، ثم عاد إلى الصحراء.

Sultan came back, with two men from the village. "Are you OK?" Sultan asked.

عاد سلطان برفقة رجلين من القرية. وسأله "هل أنت بخير؟".

Ashraf came down from the tree. "What did the wolf whisper to you?" he asked.

نزل أشرف من الشجرة. و سأل "ماذا همس لك الذئب؟".

Amin looked sad and said, "Never travel with friends who leave you when you're in danger." You, Sultan, ran back to the village to get help. Thank you. You, Ashraf, climbed the tree so the wolf would eat me, and not you!"

بدا أمين حزينًا وقال: "لا تسافر أبدًا مع الأصدقاء الذين يتركونك عندما تكون في خطر". لقد ركضت أنت يا سلطان إلى القرية للحصول على المساعدة. شكرًا لك. أنت يا أشرف تسلقت الشجرة حتي يأكلني الذئب وليس أنت!

"I'm sorry, Amin," said Ashraf, feeling bad. "I was so scared. I want to be a better friend from now on."

قال أشرف وهو يشعر بالسوء: "أنا آسف يا أمين. كنت خائفًا جدًا. أريد أن أصبح صديقًا أفضل من الآن فصاعدًا."

Listen and read.

One day, Little Fish was swimming with her friends in the wide, blue sea.

في أحد الأيام، كانت سمكة صغيرة تسبح مع صديقاتها في البحر الأزرق الواسع.

They were playing games in the coral reef and having fun. They could see their families who weren't far away. Later that day, while they were playing, they saw a dark shadow moving towards them.



It was the early afternoon, but suddenly the sea looked dark and frightening. The shadow was the shape of a huge shark with a big mouth and a long, strong tail. Little Fish was very frightened. She looked for her family and she saw her father swimming towards her.

كانوا يلعبون الألعاب في الشعاب المرجانية ويستمتعون. يمكنهم رؤية عائلاتهم التي لم تكن بعيدة. وفي وقت لاحق من ذلك اليوم، بينما كانوا يلعبون، رأوا ظلًا داكنًا يتحرك نحوهم. كان ذلك في وقت مبكر من بعد الظهر، ولكن فجأة بدا البحر مظلمًا ومخيفًا. كان الظل على شكل سمكة قرش ضخمة ذات فم كبير وذيل طويل قوي. كانت السمكة الصغيرة خائفة جدًا. بحثت عن عائلتها ورأت والدها يسبح نحوها.

"Listen to me everybody," said Father Fish. "Everybody come together, quickly." All the fish swam towards Father Fish.

قال الأب فيش: "اسمعوني جميعًا". "ليجتمع الجميع بسرعة." سبحت جميع الأسماك نحو الأب فيش.

"If we all swim together, we'll look like a big shark. Come together everybody. Now, be brave Little Fish, and swim with me. We'll all swim together towards the shark."

"إذا سبحنا جميعًا معًا، فسنبدو مثل سمكة قرش كبيرة. اجتمعوا جميعًا. الآن، كوني شجاعة أيتها السمكة الصغيرة واسبحي معي. سنسبح جميعًا معًا نحو سمكة القرش.

As they swam, they made a big shadow in the shape of a shark ... a bigger shark! The shark saw this big shadow and he thought, "Oh, dear. That shark is bigger than me. I think it might be dangerous. Perhaps I'll go home." And he turned around and quickly swam away. All the fish cheered and hugged each other. They were happy because they were safe again.

وعندما سبحوا، كونوا ظلاً كبيراً على شكل سمكة قرش.. قرش أكبر! رأى القرش هذا الظل الكبير وفكر: "أوه، يا إلهي. هذا القرش أكبر مني. أعتقد أنه قد يكون خطيرًا. ربما سأعود إلى المنزل." واستدار وسبح بسرعة بعيدًا. وهتفت جميع الأسماك واحتضنت بعضها البعض. لقد كانوا سعداء لأنهم أصبحوا آمنين مرة أخرى.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. When did the men get up?

....

2. How did the men go to the desert road?

....

3. What did they carry on their backs?

....

4. What did they enjoy?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

dead - sunrise - grew up - village - market

Three men, Amin, Ashraf, and Sultan, lived in a 1)........................ They were very good friends, and they 2)........................ together. They studied at the same school and now worked near each other. The friends decided to go to the 3)........................ in the nearby town. They thought they should leave before 4)........................ so it's not too hot to walk.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. They always get up before the .... in the morning.
   a) sunrise b) sunbath c) sunset d) sunburn
2. I always enjoy .... with my friends online.
   a) reading b) chatting c) running d) walking
3. After a ...., the friends came to an oasis.
   a) where b) when c) while d) white

4. Some birds are standing on the .... of the tre

a) lunch b) brunch c) beaches d) branches

5. He fell to the ground and .... to be dead

a) agreed b) pretended c) replied d) touched

6. The wolf came to Amin and .... his face with his nose

a) touched b) killed c) barked d) spoke

7. The pigeons .... at each othe

a) cooked b) cooed c) barked d) left

8. The wolf .... to Amin so his friends didn't hear i

a) talked b) chatted c) whispered d) cried

9. The .... is a very beautiful anima

a) deer b) dare c) dear d) dairy

10. Amin .... that he was on his own in the oasis

a) decided b) fell c) realized d) left

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. village - in - The three - lived - men - the same - .

....

2. sunrise - They - decided - to leave - before - early - .

....

3. with - like - Who - would - you - to travel - ?

....

4. to be dead - and - Amin - to the ground - pretended - fell - .

....

5. other - cooed - The - pigeons - at - each - .

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Writing Corner

Ahmad Ibn Majid

Ahmad Ibn Majid is the person who made it easier for us to travel on the sea today. He was the first Arab seaman. He was born in 1432 in what is now Oman. As a child, he was fascinated by the sea. He wanted to explore the seas and oceans. He was a very intelligent man and studied a lot. He learned languages, and learned about math, geography, and astronomy. He became known as a master navigator.

Omar Hegazy

At the age of 25, Omar was a banker. He was doing well at work, and was enjoying his life. Then he had an accident. He went to hospital, where the doctors removed part of his leg. Then, Omar heard about two disabled athletes, and he wanted to be like them. He started training hard and working on his fitness. Amazingly, he broke a world record in holding his breath underwater. Now, Omar motivates people all around the world.

Alyssa Azar: A biography

Alyssa Azar is an amazing young woman, and one of Australia's most ambitious adventurers. She's the youngest Australian to climb Mount Everest. Alyssa is from Australia. She loved sports as a child. First of all, at the age of eight, she crossed the Kokoda Track. Next, she climbed Mount Kilimanjaro when she was 14. After that, she decided to climb Mount Everest, and her parents helped her. Finally, in 2016, Alyssa made it to the top of Everest.

Help your child write paragraphs.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرات.

Review on Unit (5)

Vocabulary

astronomy	علم الفلك	fascinated by	منبهر بـ	peninsula	ه جزيرة
navigate	يبحر	navigator	ملاح - بحار	sailors	حارة
canoe	قارب - زورق	tent	خيمة	cooker	وتجاز
banker	موظف بنك	motorbike	دراجة نارية	inspire	
hold his breath	يحبس أنفاسه	crutch	عكاز	fins	انف
model spaceship	مجسم سفينة فضاء	spacesuit	بدلة فضاء	course	هج دراسي - دورة
cleaning wipes	مناديل مبللة للتنظيف	mission	مهمة	attached to	بط بـ - معلق بـ
marathon	ماراثون (سباق)	astronaut	رائد فضاء	base camp	خيم الرئيسي
ambitious	طموح	biography	سيرة ذاتية	avalanche	يار جليدي
branch	غصن - فرع	crack	صدع - كسر	realize	رك
sunrise	شروق الشمس	whisper	يهمس	pretend	ظاهر

Language

Phrasal verbs

A phrasal verb is a verb that is followed by a preposition.

فعل المركب: هو فعل يُتبع بحرف جر وحرف الجر يغير معنى الفعل.

fill in	يكمل - يملأ (استمارة)	wake up	يستيقظ	pick up	لم
see off	يودع	figure out	يكتشف	put away	ع الشيء في مكانه
drop off	يوصل شخص لمكان	look up	يبحث عن - يكتشف		

Present Simple Passive

Affirmative الإثبات — **Object (مفعول) + am / is / are + P.P.**

e.g. TV is watched by me.

Negative النفي — **Object (مفعول) + am / is / are + not + P.P**

e.g. Tennis isn't played by me.

Question السؤال — **Am / Is / Are + object (مفعول) + P.P ..?**

e.g. Are clothes bought by you?

Dictation on Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

مشهور بـ .... يبحر ....

علم الفلك .... بحارة ....

بحار .... شبه جزيرة ....

Lesson (2)

يكتشف .... يملأ - يكمل ....

يضع الشيء في مكانه .... يستيقظ ....

يبحث عن معلومة .... يتعلم ....

يوصل شخص لمكان .... يودع ....

Lesson (3)

الصحراء .... نهر الأمازون ....

القطب الشمالي .... جبال الهيمالايا ....

Lesson (4)

يحبس أنفاسه .... موظف بنك ....

زعانف .... دراجة نارية ....

يلهم .... عكاز ....

Lesson (5)

مهمة .... دورة تدريبية ....

يتصل بـ - معلق بـ .... بدلة فضائية ....

مناديل مبللة للتنظيف .... سفينة فضاء ....

ماراثون .... رائد فضاء ....

Lesson (6)

شخص طموح .... سيرة ذاتية ....

انهيار جليدي .... المخيم الرئيسي ....

Lesson (7)

غصن .... يدردش ....

يدرك .... يهدل (صوت الحمام) ....

يتظاهر .... غزال ....

ذئب .... يهمس ....

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Exam on Unit (5)

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where did the friends arrive in?

....

2. What did they see?

....

3. What happened when they got closer to the deer?

....

4. How was the scene at the end?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

trains - clothes - cleaning wipes - liquids - spaceship

On the spaceship, it's important to keep everything clean. The te can't use cleaning 1)................................ for cleaning as there's less gravity they use 2)........................ There's no shower or bath in the 3)...................... so astronauts wash themselves with cleaning wipes, too. The astrona sometimes wear the same 4)..................... for a long time in the spacesh

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Three men, Amin, Ashraf, and Sultan, lived in a village. They were ve good friends. One day, the friends decided to go to the market in the near town. The men got up at 5:30 the next day, and walked together through t desert road. They carried backpacks on their backs with water and snac After a while, they came to an oasis, and saw a beautiful deer with big ey They got closer, the deer ran away. Suddenly they lost their way and everyone was on his own. Amin slowly turned around and saw a black wo He defended himself with a long stick. The wolf ran away. His friends ca back together again. They decided not to go into the desert again.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. They got up at .... the next d
   a) thirty five b) fifty six c) five thirty d) four thirty

Help your child deal with such questions.

...ك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

2. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to the ....

a) towns b) friends c) deer d) oases

Answer the following questions.

3. Where did the friends decide to go? ....

4. How did Amin defend himself? ....

4 The Reader.

Read and write YES or NO.

1. Hatem, Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine are bad friends. (...............)
2. The friends like to chat about their school days together. (...............)

Read and answer the questions.

3. Who was the editor? ....
4. Why does the PE teacher think it's good to have Tarek on the school newspaper? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My mom .... me up early yesterday.

   a) looked b) woke c) saw d) figured

2. If you .... to join the next space trip, you're very lucky.

   a) chooses b) chosen c) are chosen d) has chosen

3. The astronauts .... by the doctors regularly for their fitness.

   a) test b) are tested c) will test d) are testing

4. Astronauts .... to be physically fit.

   a) need b) needs c) is needing d) has needed

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. the spaceship - no - There's - shower - on - . ...
2. the sea - We - safely - can - travel - on - . ...

Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

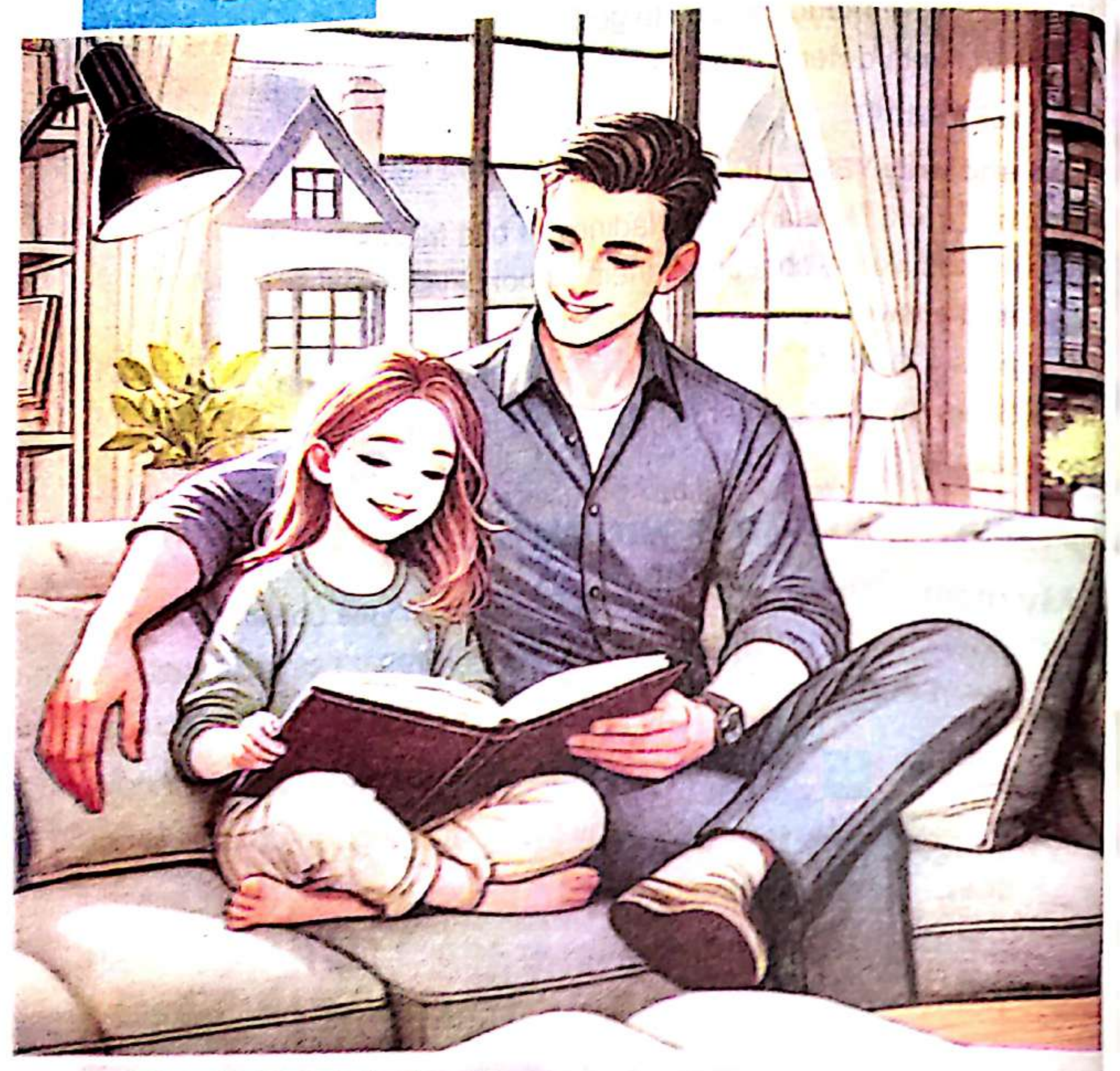
A trip to Luxor

Guiding elements:

(Last year - by train - the Valley of the Kings - the temples)

Unit 6 Breaking news !

أخبار عاجلة!



In this unit, the students will ...

- understand specific details in a news report. — التفاصيل المحددة في تقرير إخباري.
- listen, read, and write about the job of a journalist. — ع ويقرأ ويكتب عن وظيفة الصحفي.
- understand and use the present and past simple passive. — ويستخدم صيغة المبني للمجهول في الزمنين المضارع والماضي البسيط.
- understand and use phrases for reacting to personal news. — ويستخدم العبارات للتفاعل مع الأخبار الشخصية.
- understand the relationship between a series of events. — العلاقة بين سلسلة من الأحداث.
- understand and use the future simple passive. — ويستخدم صيغة المبني للمجهول في المستقبل البسيط.
- write a simple newspaper report. — تقرير صحفي بسيط.
- make logical inferences. — استنتاجات منطقية.

Lesson (1) OUR SCHOOL NEWSPAPER

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

garage sale	معرض للأشياء المستعملة	volunteer	متطوع
equipment	معدات	hutch	قفص "أرنب"
responsible	مسؤول	check on	يفحص - يطمئن على
vaccinations	تطعيمات - أمصال	newspaper	جريدة
editor	محرر	journalist	صحفي

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

items	أشياء	difficult	صعب	money	مال / نقود
vet	طبيب بيطري	shape	شكل	lettuce	خس
pet	حيوان أليف	rabbit	أرنب	special	مميز
articles	مقالات	once	مرة	twice	مرتين

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
collect	يجمع	collected	collected
need	يحتاج	needed	needed
clean	ينظف	cleaned	cleaned

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
mean	يعني - يقصد	meant	meant
bring	يُحضر	brought	brought
give	يُعطي	gave	given
teach	يُعلم	taught	taught
get	يحصل على	got	got
find	يجد	found	found
know	يعرف	knew	known

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

health care	رعاية صحية	look after	يعتني بـ
care for	يعتني بـ / يهتم بـ	is married to	متزوج من
take turns with	يتناوب مع	make sure	يتأكد
are sold to	تُباع لـ	on time	في الوقت المحدد
get better	يتحسن	do calculations	يقوم بالعمليات الحسابية

Definitions تعريفات

volunteer	someone who works for free	متطوع
equipment	tools or things you need to do something	معدات
newspaper	a printed paper that gives you news	جريدة
editor	the person who chooses the news stories	محرر
hutch	a small house for a rabbit	قفص "أرنب"
responsible	being someone others can rely on	مسؤول
vaccination	a medicine that protects a person or animal from a disease	تطعيم
check on	to make sure that someone is doing well	يفحص - يطمئن على

Read the articles

Our School Newspaper

Making a garage sale

Every year we have a **garage sale** at our school. This means **volunteers** from our school all bring in old items like clothes, books, toys, or kitchen **equipment**. These items are old, but they are still in good shape and can be used again. These items are sold to anyone who would like to buy them. The money we collect is used to help children who need health care in hospitals. We also buy some new toys and take them to the children with our teachers. Everyone is really happy!

Noha

كل عام لدينا معرض لبيع الأشياء المستعملة في مدرستنا. وهذا يعني أن المتطوعين من مدرستنا يقومون جميعًا بإحضار أشياء قديمة مثل الملابس أو الكتب أو الألعاب أو معدات المطبخ. هذه الأشياء قديمة، لكنها لا تزال في حالة جيدة ويمكن استخدامها مرة أخرى. تُباع هذه الأشياء لأي شخص يرغب في شرائها. تُستخدم الأموال التي نجمعها لمساعدة الأطفال الذين يحتاجون إلى رعاية صحية في المستشفيات. نقوم أيضًا بشراء بعض الألعاب الجديدة ونأخذها إلى الأطفال مع معلمينا. الجميع سعداء حقًا!

Help your child read articles.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ المقالات.

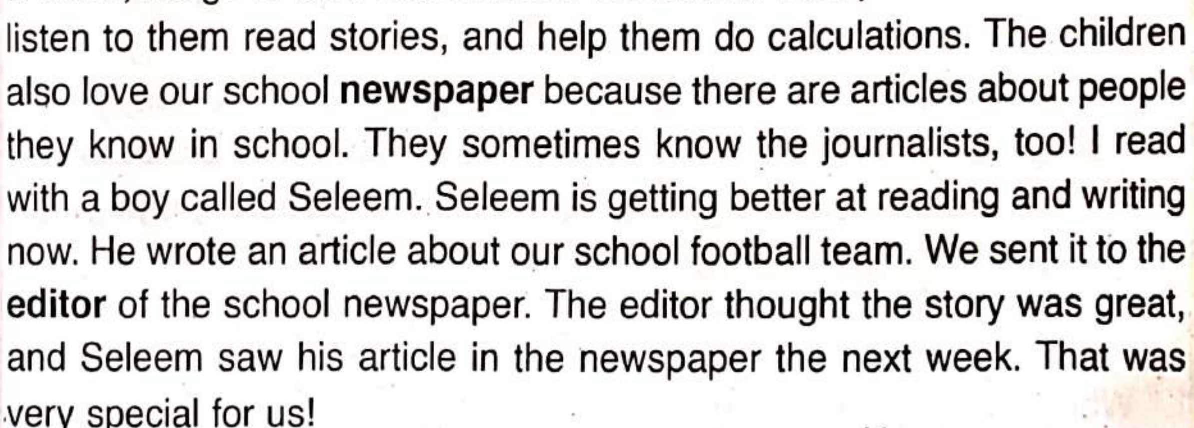
Lesson (1)



My class has a class rabbit. He's called Crunchy. He lives in a small house called a **hutch** in the school garden. We take turns with the rest of the class to look after him. We clean his hutch and give him new food and water. He loves carrots and lettuce! My class likes looking after him, and this teaches us how to care for pets and be **responsible**. Our science teacher, Mrs Doaa, is married to a vet. He comes in once a week to **check on** Crunchy, and to make sure he gets all his **vaccinations** on time.

Rana

فصلي لديه أرنب. انه يسمى كرانشي. يعيش في منزل صغير يسمى القفص في حديقة المدرسة. ونتناوب مع بقية الفصل في الاعتناء به. نقوم بتنظيف كوخه ونقدم له الطعام والماء الجديد. يحب الجزر والخس! يحب فصلي الاعتناء به، وهذا يعلمنا كيفية رعاية الحيوانات الأليفة وتحمل المسؤولية. معلمة العلوم لدينا، الأستاذة دعاء، متزوجة من طبيب بيطري. يأتي مرة واحدة في الأسبوع للاطمئنان على كرانشي، وللتأكد من حصوله على جميع التطعيمات في الوقت المحدد.



My class likes to help the younger children at our school. Some of the children in Grades 3 and 4 find it difficult to read, write, or do math. So, twice a week, we go to their classrooms. We sit with them, listen to them read stories, and help them do calculations. The children also love our school **newspaper** because there are articles about people they know in school. They sometimes know the journalists, too! I read with a boy called Seleem. Seleem is getting better at reading and writing now. He wrote an article about our school football team. We sent it to the **editor** of the school newspaper. The editor thought the story was great, and Seleem saw his article in the newspaper the next week. That was very special for us!

Hassan

يحب فصلي مساعدة الأطفال الصغار في مدرستنا. يجد بعض الأطفال في الصفين الثالث والرابع صعوبة في القراءة أو الكتابة أو حل مسائل الرياضيات. لذلك، نذهب مرتين في الأسبوع إلى فصولهم الدراسية. نجلس معهم ونستمع إليهم وهم يقرأون القصص ونساعدهم في القيام بالعمليات الحسابية. يحب الأطفال أيضًا صحيفة مدرستنا لأنها تحتوي على مقالات عن الأشخاص الذين يعرفونهم في المدرسة. وهم يعرفون أحيانًا الصحفيين أيضًا! قرأت مع صبي يدعى سليم. سليم يتحسن في القراءة والكتابة الآن. لقد كتب مقالاً عن فريق كرة القدم في مدرستنا. أرسلناها إلى رئيس تحرير جريدة المدرسة. رأى المحرر أن القصة كانت رائعة، ورأى سليم مقالته في الصحيفة في الأسبوع التالي. كان ذلك مميزًا جدًا بالنسبة لنا!

Help your child read articles.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ المقالات.

Listen and read.

Khalid's article for the school newspaper

Charity Day at School



My class likes to raise money for local charities. Our teacher, Mrs Mariam, helps us organize a special event called Charity Day every few months. We put tables and chairs in the school hall. Then we decorate the hall with flowers from the school garden. On Charity Day, our parents and peop from the community come to buy things. Some children make cakes a lemonade to sell. My friend Fares and his sister Laila make delicious snack too. We also bring books and crafts to sell. I like making models, so I ma models and I sell them on the day. We give the money we raise to loc charities. It's a special day for the community and it's always a lot of fun

فصلي جمع الأموال للجمعيات الخيرية المحلية. تساعدنا معلمتنا السيدة مريم في تنظيم حدث خاص يسمى يوم الأعمال الخيرية
عدة أشهر. نضع الطاولات والكراسي في قاعة المدرسة. ثم نقوم بتزيين القاعة بالزهور من حديقة المدرسة. في يوم الأعمال الخيرية،
آباؤنا وأفراد المجتمع لشراء الأشياء. يقوم بعض الأطفال بصنع الكعك وعصير الليمون للبيع. يقوم صديقي فارس وشقيقته ليلى بإعداد
ت خفيفة لذيذة أيضًا. نحضر أيضًا الكتب والحرف اليدوية للبيع. أحب صنع المجسمات، لذا أصنع المجسمات وأبيعها في نفس اليوم.
نعطي الأموال التي نجمعها للجمعيات الخيرية المحلية. إنه يوم خاص للمجتمع ودائمًا ما يكون فيه الكثير من المرح!

Read again and answer.

1. What does your class like?

....

2. Who helps you organize the special event?

....

3. What did you do in the school hall?

....

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where do you have a garage sale every year?

....

2. Who brings old items like clothes and books?

....

3. What can we do with these old items?

....

4. What do children need?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

check on - responsible - once - hutch - vaccinations

My class has a class rabbit. He's called Crunchy. He lives in a small ouse called a 1)...................... in the school garden. We take turns with the est of the class to look after him. We clean his hutch and give him new ood and water. He loves carrots and lettuce! My class likes looking after im, and this teaches us how to care for pets and be 2)...................... Our cience teacher, Mrs Doaa, is married to a vet. He comes in once a week to 3) .... Crunchy, and to make sure he gets all his 4)...................... on time.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A/An .... is someone who works for free.
   a) teacher b) volunteer c) vet d) engineer
2. My rabbit lives in a small ....
   a) hutch b) pot c) glass d) cup
3. The vet comes in once a week to check .... my rabbit.
   a) in b) at c) on d) for
4. My brother is .... I can rely on him.
   a) lazy b) shy c) responsible d) sick
5. All children were given two .... against measles (الحصبة).
   a) hats b) drinks c) vaccinations d) clothes

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My class likes to help the younger children at our school. Some of t children in Grades 3 and 4 find it difficult to read, write, or do math. So, tw a week, we go to their classrooms. We sit with them, listen to them re stories, and help them do calculations. The children also love our sch newspaper because there are articles about people they know in scho They sometimes know the journalists, too! I read with a boy called Selee Seleem is getting better at reading and writing now. He wrote an article abo our school football team. We sent it to the editor of the school newspap The editor thought the story was great, and Seleem saw his article in t newspaper the next week. That was very special for us!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The opposite of the underlined word "difficult" is ....

   a) easy b) bad c) hard d) tall

2. Seleem wrote an article about our school .... tea

   a) basketball b) football c) tennis d) handball

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why do the children love their school newspaper? ....
4. Who thought the story was great? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. sells - clothes - Noha - and - items - used - other - old - .

   ....

2. Mrs Rana, - is - to - a vet - married - Our teacher, - .

   ....

3. an Hassan - to - article - newspaper - the school - sent - .

   ....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Guiding elements: An event at your school

(garage sale - school - help - special)



Help your child deal with such questions.

Lesson (2) LANGUAGE

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

cheetah	الفهد الصياد	India	دولة الهند	news	أخبار
giant panda	دب الباندا العملاقة	Indians	الهنود	bamboo	خيزران - البامبو

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

fast	سريع	until	حتى	enemies	أعداء
pleased	سعيد / مسرور	country	دولة	leopard	نمر
enough	كافٍ	important	هام	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
sadly	من المؤسف	habitat	موطن	conservation	حماية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
return	يعود	returned	returned
disappear	يختفي	disappeared	disappeared
track	يتعقب	tracked	tracked
attack	يهاجم	attacked	attacked
design	يصمم	designed	designed
protect	يحمي	protected	protected
post	ينشر	posted	posted
destroy	يدمر	destroyed	destroyed
worry	يقلق	worried	worried
build	يبني	built	built
meet	يقابل	met	met
feed	يطعم	fed	fed

Important expressions and prepositions

safe area	منطقة آمنة	try very hard	نبذل قصارى جهدنا
get lost	يضل الطريق	all the time	طوال الوقت
putin danger	يتعرض للخطر	cut downfor	يقطع من أجل

Listen and read.

Animal News

The cheetahs are back!


One of the chee
in Kuno National Pa

Cheetahs, the fastest animals in the world, have returned to India. They lived in India until the 1950s, but then slowly disappeared. However, much later, eight of them were brought to a big park in India – Kuno National Park. The Indian people are very pleased to have these animals back in their country. The cheetahs now live in a safe area, where they **are fed** eve day. They **aren't watched** all the time, but they **are tracked** so they don't g lost. Some people are a little worried. This is because when the cheetahs mo around more, they will meet other big cats, for example, leopards, which cou attack the cheetahs. Some people are asking, "**Is** the area **designed** to be sa enough?" It's so important that they **are protected**.

أسرع الحيوانات في العالم، عادت إلى الهند. لقد عاشوا في الهند حتى الخمسينيات من القرن الماضي لكنهم اختفوا بعد ذلك ببطء. ومع بعد ذلك بكثير، تم إحضار ثمانية منهم إلى محمية كبيرة في الهند - محمية كونو الوطنية. الشعب الهندي سعيد للغاية بعودة هذه الحيوانات بلاده. تعيش الفهود الآن في منطقة آمنة، حيث يتم اطعامهم كل يوم. لا يتم مراقبتهم طوال الوقت، ولكن يتم تعقبهم حتى لا يضيعوا. بعض يشعرون بالقلق قليلا. وذلك لأنه عندما تتحرك الفهود أكثر، فإنها ستقابل قططا كبيرة أخرى، مثل النمور الصيادة، والتي يمكن أن تهاجم يتساءل بعض الناس: "هل المنطقة مصممة لتكون آمنة بما فيه الكفاية؟" من المهم جدًا أن يتم حمايتهم.

More giant pandas!


A giant panc
eating bamb

Who doesn't love a giant panda? There are lots of videos of them on social media! **Were** any of the videos **posted** by you? Sadly, some years ago, giant pandas **were put** in danger. Much of their habitat **was destroyed** to build new homes. Their habitat **wasn't protecte** Pandas only eat bamboo, which **was cut** down for the houses. Many peop were very worried, so the pandas **were put** into special areas, where the **were protected**. They **were given** as much bamboo as they could eat. Thi conservation work has been very successful. In the 1980s, there were onl around 1,200 giant pandas. Now there are almost 2,000! This number show us something important. When we try very hard, we can help animals live lon healthy lives.

الذي لا يحب الباندا العملاقة؟ هناك الكثير من مقاطع الفيديو لهم على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي! هل قمت بنشر أي من مقاطع الفيديو؟ من لأنه منذ عدة سنوات، تعرضت حيوانات الباندا العملاقة للخطر. تم تدمير جزء كبير من موطنهم لبناء منازل جديدة. لم يكن موطنهم محميا. الباندا فقط الخيزران، الذي تم قطعه من أجل المنازل. كان الكثير من الناس قلقين للغاية، لذلك تم وضع حيوانات الباندا في مناطق خاصة، كانت محمية. لقد تم إعطاؤهم قدرًا كبيرًا من الخيزران بقدر ما يمكنهم تناوله. لقد كانت أعمال الحماية هذه ناجحة للغاية. وفي الثمانينيات، لم هناك سوى حوالي 1200 باندا عملاقة، الآن هناك ما يقرب من 2000! هذا الرقم يبين لنا شيئًا مهمًا. عندما نبذل قصارى جهدنا، يمكننا مساعدة الحيوانات على العيش حياة طويلة وصحية.

Help your child listen and read.



The Past Simple Passive

زمن الماضي البسيط في صيغة المبني للمجهول

Usage الاستخدام

- We use **was / were + P.P** (the past simple passive) when a past action is more important than who did it, or when we do not know (or it is not important) who did something.

نستخدم صيغة المبني للمجهول في زمن الماضي البسيط عندما يكون الحدث الماضي أكثر أهمية من الذي قام بالفعل أو عندما لا نعرف من قام بالفعل.

	Active صيغة المبني للمعلوم	Passive صيغة المبني للمجهول
Affirmative الإثبات	Subject (الفاعل) + (التصريف الثاني للفعل) e.g. Pandas ate the bamboo.	Object (مفعول) + was / were + P.P. e.g. Bamboo was eaten.
Negative النفي	Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل) e.g. They didn't feed the panda.	Object (مفعول) + was / were + not + P.P. e.g. The panda wasn't fed.
(Yes / No) question: السؤال بـ هل	Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل)? e.g. Did Ali post the videos?	Was / Were + object (مفعول) + P.P....? e.g. Were the videos posted by Ali?
Wh-question السؤال بأداة استفهام	Q.W أداة استفهام + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf.? e.g. Where did people find the giant panda?	Q.W أداة استفهام + was / were + object (مفعول) + P.P...? e.g. Where was the giant panda found?

Remember تذكر

The Present Simple Passive

Affirmative الإثبات

Object (مفعول) **+ (am / is / are) + P.P.**

e.g. Giant pandas are protected.

Negative النفي

Object (مفعول) **+ (am / is / are) + not + P.P.**

e.g. They aren't watched all the time.

Question السؤال

(Yes / No) question:

(Am / Is / Are) + object (مفعول) **+ P.P. ?**

e.g. Is the area designed to be safe enough?

Wh-question:

Q.W + (am / is / are) + object (مفعول) **+ P.P. ?**

e.g. Where are the cheetahs tracked?

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Cheetahs .... tracked so they don't get l
   a) are   b) is   c) am   d) was
2. The cheetahs are .... every d
   a) feed   b) feeds   c) feeding   d) fed
3. The bamboo was .... down for the panda to e
   a) cut   b) cuts   c) cutting   d) was cut
4. Giant pandas habitat .... protec
   a) aren't   b) am not   c) wasn't   d) weren't

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between bracket

1. Is the area .... (design) to be safe enou
2. Giant pandas were .... (puts) in dan
3. Cheetahs .... (isn't) watched all the ti
4. Much of their habitat was .... (destroy) to build new hom

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

. What are the fastest animals in the world?

....

. Where have these animals returned?

....

. How many animals were brought to the big park?

....

. Who are very pleased to have these animals back?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

protected - people - designed - aren't - tracked

The cheetahs now live in a safe area, where they are fed every day. ...ey 1)................ watched all the time, but they are 2)................ so they don't ...t lost. Some people are a little worried. This is because when the cheetahs ...ove around more, they will meet other big cats, for example, leopards, ...hich could attack the cheetahs. Some people are asking, "Is the area .... to be safe enough?" It's so important that they are 4)................

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

. ... any of the videos posted by you?
a) Was b) Is c) Were d) Am

. It's important that giant pandas are ....
a) protect b) protected c) protecting d) protects

. The cheetahs aren't .... all the time.
a) watch b) watches c) watching d) watched

. Giant pandas .... put into special areas.
a) was b) were c) is d) am

. Eight cheetahs were .... to a big park in India.
a) bring b) brings c) bringing d) brought



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Who doesn't love a giant panda? There are lots of videos of them social media! Were any of the videos posted by you? Sadly, some ye ago, giant pandas were put in danger. Much of their habitat was destroye build new homes. Their habitat wasn't protected. Pandas only eat bamb which was cut down for the houses. Many people were very worried, so pandas were put into special areas, where they were protected. They w given as much bamboo as they could eat. This conservation work has b very successful. In the 1980s, there were only around 1,200 giant pand Now there are almost 2,000! This number shows us something importa When we try very hard, we can help animals live long, healthy lives.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is generally about ....

   a) cheetahs b) giant pandas c) lions d) fish

2. The opposite of the underlined word "danger" is ....

   a) safety b) cold c) hard d) dangerous

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where were many pandas put into? ....
4. How many giant pandas were there in the 1980s? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. are - every - The cheetahs - day - fed - .

   ....

2. put - pandas - The giant - were - danger - in - .

   ....



6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Cheetahs

Guiding elements:

(fastest - India - fed - tracked)



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3) WELL DONE!

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

fantastic	رائع	luck	حظ
good news	أخبار جيدة	pity	شفقة
bad news	أخبار سيئة		

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

science fair	معرض العلوم	prize	جائزة
agree	يوافق	vacation	أجازة - عطلة
invite	يدعو	sure	متأكد
competition	مسابقة	date	تاريخ
pass	يجتاز - ينجح		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

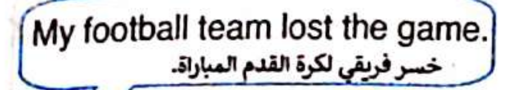
Present		Past	P.P
hurt	يؤذي - يجرح	hurt	hurt
lose	يفقد - يخسر	lost	lost
win	يفوز	won	won

Phrases for reacting to personal news

Good news phrases عبارات خاصة بالأخبار الجيدة		Bad news phrases عبارات خاصة بالأخبار السيئة	
Oh, wow! That's great!	أوه، واو! هذا رائع!	Oh, no! That's too bad!	أوه لا! هذا سيء للغاية
That's amazing news!	هذه أخبار مدهشة!	Better luck next time	حظًا أوفر المرة القادمة
I'm so pleased for you!	أنا مسرور جدًا لك!	What a pity!	يا للأسف!
Well done!	أحسنت!	I'm sorry to hear that!	أنا حزين لسماع ذلك!

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Read and role-play











Listen and read.

Amira	:	Hi, Fareeda. مرحبًا يا فريدة.
Fareeda	:	Hi, Amira. Are you OK? مرحبًا يا أميرة. هل أنت بخير؟
Amira	:	Not really. I hurt my hand when I was playing volleyball. لست على ما يرام. لقد جرحت يدي عندما كنت ألعب الكرة الطائرة.
Fareeda	:	Oh no! That's too bad! I"m sorry. أوه لا! هذا سيء للغاية! أنا آسف.
Amira	:	Now I can't play in the school team next week. الآن لا أستطيع اللعب في فريق المدرسة الأسبوع المقبل.

Help your child read and role-play.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويمثل الأدوار.

Fareeda : What a pity ! Don't be sad. Come to my house and we can watch a movie together. يا للأسف ! لا تحزني. تعالى إلى منزلي ويمكننا مشاهدة فيلم معًا.

Amira : Thanks, Fareeda. That would be nice. شكرًا، فريدة. سيكون هذا لطيفًا.

Seleem : Hi, Tarek. مرحبًا طارق.

Tarek : Hi, Seleem. You look happy! مرحبًا سليم. تبدو سعيدًا!

Seleem : I am! I passed my science test with 72%.

نعم أنا سعيد! لقد نجحت في اختبار العلوم بنسبة 72%.

Tarek : Oh, wow! That's awesome news. أوه، واو! هذه أخبار رائعة.

Seleem : Thanks! I'm really happy because I usually find science very difficult.

شكرًا! أنا سعيد حقًا لأنني عادةً ما أجد العلوم صعبة للغاية.

Tarek : Well done! I'm so pleased for you! I didn't pass my science test, I have to do it again.

أحسنت! أنا مسرور جدًا لأجلك! لم أتمكن من اجتياز اختبار العلوم الخاص بي، ولا بد لي من القيام بذلك مرة أخرى.

Seleem : I'm sorry, Tarek. Better luck next time I'm sure you'll pass next time.

أنا آسف يا طارق. حظًا أفضل المرة القادمة أنا متأكد من أنك سوف تجتازه في المرة القادمة.

Tarek : Thanks, Seleem. شكرًا، سليم.

Farah : Hi, Jana. I've got some great news. My parents have agreed to let me have a party for my birthday!

مرحباً، جنى! لدي خبر مفرح جداً، والداي وافقا على إقامة حفلة لعيد ميلادي!

Jana : Oh, wow! That's fantastic news. When's your birthday?

يا للروعة! هذا خبر رائع جدًا. متى يصادف يوم ميلادك؟

Farah : My birthday's next month. I can invite all my friends.

عيد ميلادي الشهر المقبل. يمكنني دعوة جميع أصدقائي.

Jana : That's great! I'm so pleased for you. What date is it?

هذا رائع! أنا سعيدة جدًا من أجلك. ما موعده؟

Farah : It's on Saturday, September 16th. Can you come?

سيكون يوم السبت، السادس عشر من سبتمبر. هل يمكنك الحضور؟

Jana : No, I won't be able to come. That's a pity. I'm visiting my grandparents that weekend. لا، لن أتمكن من الحضور. يا للأسف! سأزور أجدادي في عطلة نهاية ذلك الأسبوع.

Farah : Oh, no! That's too bad. Let's do something together the weekend before. يا للأسف! هذا محزن جدًا. لنفعل شيئًا معًا في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع التي تسبق ذلك.

Jana : That's a good idea. إنها فكرة جيدة.

Lesson (4) The LIFE OF A JOURNALI...

Key vocabulary

international	عالمي - دولي	journalist	
journalism	الصحافة	staff	هيئة الموظفين
breaking news	اخبار عاجلة	sociable	

Extra vocabulary

language	لغة	quiet	هادئ	correct	سليم
firstly	اولا	university	جامعة	story	
secondly	ثانيا	spelling	الهجاء	different	
after that	بعد ذلك	quite	إلى حد ما	scripts	
location	الموقع	cameraman	مصور	soundman	الصوت
report	تقرير	subway	مترو الأنفاق	cab	
services	خدمات	midday	منتصف النهار	article	

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
decide	يقرر	decided	decided
study	يدرس	studied	studied
communicate	يتواصل	communicated	communicated
happen	يحدث	happened	happened
call	يتواصل - يتصل	called	called
describe	يصف	described	described
interview	يجري مقابلة - حوار	interviewed	interviewed

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

work for	يعمل لدى	decide to	
focus on	يركز على	come in	
kinds of	أنواع من	get up	
write about	يكتب عن	from home	
at home	في المنزل	on weekends	خلال نهاية الأسبوع

Help your child identify these words.

أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (4)

Definitions

تعريفات

related to more than one country	عالمي - دولي
new information about an event that is happening now	أخبار عاجلة
the study, or job, of writing articles for newspapers and magazines	الصحافة
describing a person who likes talking to, and being with, other people	شخص اجتماعي
people who work at a place, for example, a hotel	هيئة الموظفين

Listen and read.



Sylvia, journalist

Hi, I'm Sylvia! I'm an **international** journalist, and I live in Egypt. I work for an English newspaper. People sometimes ask me why I wanted to be a journalist. I really love the English language, so I decided to focus on it at school. After that, I studied **journalism** at university. I think a journalist needs to be good at two things. Firstly, they need to communicate well to get a good story. Secondly, they have to write well and quickly, using correct spelling and grammar.

مرحبًا، أنا سيلفيا! أنا صحفية دولية وأعيش في مصر. أنا أعمل في صحيفة إنجليزية. يسألني الناس أحيانًا لماذا أردت أن أصبح صحفية. أنا أحب اللغة الإنجليزية حقًا، لذلك قررت التركيز عليها في المدرسة. وبعد ذلك درست الصحافة في الجامعة. أعتقد أن الصحفي يجب أن يكون جيدًا في شيئين. أولاً، يحتاجون إلى التواصل جيدًا للحصول على خبر جيد. ثانيًا، عليهم الكتابة جيدًا وبسرعة، باستخدام الحروف الهجائية والقواعد الصحيحة.

I love my job. It's fun, and every day is different because we don't know what news will come in. There are many kinds of journalists. I'm a news journalist, so I write the **breaking news**, that is, the news as it starts to happen.

أنا أحب وظيفتي. إنه شيء ممتع، وكل يوم يختلف لأننا لا نعرف ما هي الأخبار التي ستأتي. هناك أنواع عديدة من الصحفيين. أنا صحفية أخبار، لذا أكتب الأخبار العاجلة، أي الأخبار فور حدوثها.

Every day, I get up early and have breakfast. Then I call my editor to
what stories I need to write about. I write my news reports from home,
I can get anywhere in the city if there's a story there. Luckily, we have
excellent subway and cab service here. I travel all over Egypt, and
internationally, when I need to. Last week, I was in India!

أستيقظ مبكراً وأتناول وجبة الإفطار. ثم أتصل برئيس التحرير الخاص بي لمعرفة الأخبار التي أحتاج إلى الكتابة عنها. أكتب الإخبارية من المنزل، لكن يمكنني الذهاب إلى أي مكان في المدينة إذا كان هناك خبر. ولحسن الحظ، لدينا خدمة مترو أنفاق أجرة ممتازة هنا. أسافر إلى جميع أنحاء مصر، وأيضًا إلى الخارج، عندما أحتاج إلى ذلك. الأسبوع الماضي كنت في الهند!

All the news stories are sent to the editor by midday. Then I get so
lunch, often with a friend. In the afternoon, I start researching stories
interviewing people, ready for the next day. Sometimes, if a news stor
breaking, I need to work in the evening, and into the night, and someti
even on weekends!

إرسال جميع الأخبار إلى المحرر بحلول منتصف النهار. ثم أتناول الغداء غالبًا مع صديق. في فترة ما بعد الظهر، أبدأ في البحث عن وإجراء المقابلات مع الأشخاص، استعدادًا لليوم التالي. في بعض الأحيان، إذا كان هناك خبر عاجل، أحتاج إلى العمل في المساء، الليل، وأحيانًا حتى في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع!

Last Monday, I was so happy. One of my articles was chosen to be one
the main stories. It was about a fire in a hotel – luckily, nobody was hu
think my report was liked because I interviewed lots of the **staff** who w
at the hotel. I think this made my writing more interesting because I
described how they felt. My editor said she liked it very much.

الاثنين الماضي، كنت سعيدة جدًا. تم اختيار إحدى مقالاتي لتكون واحدة من الأخبار الرئيسية. كان الأمر يتعلق بحريق في أحد فندق ولحسن الحظ لم يصب أحد بأذى. أعتقد أن تقريري نال الإعجاب لأنني أجريت مقابلات مع الكثير من الموظفين الذين يعملون الفندق. أعتقد أن هذا جعل كتابتي أكثر إثارة للاهتمام لأنني وصفت ما شعروا به. قالت محررتي إنها أحببت ذلك كثيرًا.

As you can see, my job is very exciting, and there's something new
every day. I am quite **sociable**, so I enjoy interviewing people and chatt
to other journalists about news stories. However, I also like to be quiet
home when I write my news articles. I love living in Egypt, too. It's fun, a
I have a lot of friends here. I'm very happy!

ترى، عملي مثير للغاية، وهناك شيء جديد كل يوم. أنا اجتماعية تمامًا، لذا أستمتع بإجراء المقابلات مع الأشخاص والدردشة مع الصحفيين الآخرين حول التقارير الإخبارية. ومع ذلك، أحب أيضًا أن أكون هادئة في المنزل عندما أكتب مقالاتي الإخبارية. أحب العيش في مصر أيضًا. إنه أمر ممتع، ولدي الكثير من الأصدقاء هنا. أنا سعيدة جدًا!

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Lesson (4)

Listen and read.

Blog Log in | Upload | Download



My name is Waleed Bashir and I'm a sports journalist. I love my job because I love sport! Every morning, I go to the newspaper office and I have meetings with my editor and other journalists. Then we decide which games I need to watch. If it's a football game, I arrive about three hours before the game starts. Journalists from television, radio, and newspapers sit together in a place that's called the press box. We all chat while we get ready. During the game, I make a lot of notes. At the end of the game, I watch the interviews with the club managers and players, and I make more notes. I go back to the press box and I start writing my story. I include what the players say, details of the game, and my opinion of the game. I finish the article in the press box and send it to my newspaper office to print. All the articles are sent from the press box to save time.

اسمي وليد بشير وأنا صحفي رياضي. أحب عملي لأنني أحب الرياضة! أذهب كل صباح إلى مكتب الصحيفة وأعقد اجتماعات مع رئيس تحريري وصحفيين آخرين. ثم نقرر أي المباريات يجب أن أشاهدها. إذا كانت مباراة كرة قدم، أصل قبل حوالي ثلاث ساعات من بدء المباراة. يجلس الصحفيون من التلفزيون والراديو والصحف معًا في مكان يسمى مقصورة الصحافة. نحن جميعًا نتحدث بينما نستعد. أثناء اللعبة، أقوم بتدوين الكثير من الملاحظات. في نهاية المباراة، أشاهد المقابلات مع مديري النادي واللاعبين، وأدون المزيد من الملاحظات. أعود إلى مقصورة الصحافة وأبدأ في كتابة التقرير الإخباري. أقوم بتضمين ما يقوله اللاعبون وتفاصيل المباراة ورأيي في المباراة. أنهي المقال في مقصورة الصحافة وأرسله إلى مكتب الجريدة لطباعته. يتم إرسال جميع المقالات من مقصورة الصحافة لتوفير الوقت.

Read again and answer.

1. Why does Waleed love his job?

....

2. What does Waleed do during the game?

....

General Activities

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What's Sylvia's job?

   ....

2. Where does Sylvia live?

   ....

3. What language does she love?

   ....

4. Where did she study journalism?

   ....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

journalist - editor - different - breaking - get up

I love my job. It's fun, and every day is 1)................ because we d
know what news will come in. There are many kinds of journalists. I'r
news 2)................, so I write the 3)................ news, that is, the news a
starts to happen. Every day, I 4)................ early and have breakfast. Th
I call my editor to see what stories I need to write about.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I interviewed lots of the .... who work at the ho
   a) stuff b) stiff c) staff d) story
2. Ali is .... He likes talking to, and being with, other peo
   a) shy b) sociable c) silly d) sad
3. Hani loves .... He wants to be a journal
   a) medicine b) teaching c) animals d) journalism
4. Malak is a/an .... journalist; she can travel to many countri
   a) international b) local c) national d) civil
5. Heba works .... an English newspap
   a) in b) on c) at d) for

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد أولادك على التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Lesson (4)

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hi, I'm Heba. I live in Egypt. I'm a journalist. I work for an English newspaper. Last Monday, I was so happy. One of my articles was chosen to be one of the main stories. It was about a fire in a hotel – luckily, nobody was hurt. I think my report was liked because I interviewed lots of the staff who work at the hotel. I think this made my writing more interesting because I described how they felt. My editor said she liked it very much.

I) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Heba is a ....

   a) vet   b) journalist   c) doctor   d) teacher

2. The underlined word "happy" means ....

   a) sad   b) safe   c) pleased   d) sick

II) ... following questions.

3. Who liked the article very much? ....
4. Why does Heba think her report was interesting? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. studied - at - Ali - journalism - university - .

....

2. like - Does - Sylvia - in - living - Egypt - ?

....

3. stories - are - All - news - the - to - sent - the editor - .

....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

A TV reporter

Guiding elements:

(get up - scripts - location - soundman)

....

....

....

Lesson (5) LANGUAGE

Definitions

peaceful	very quiet and relaxing
promise	to say that something will be done
investigate	to find out the facts about something

Vocabulary

trash	قمامة	polluted	ملوث	problem	
near x far	قريب × بعيد	chemicals	مواد كيميائية	factory	
fishermen	صيادين	dangerous	خطير	unknown	معروف
local	محلي	wildlife	الحياة البرية	fertilizer	
reporter	مراسل صحفي	notes	ملاحظات	truth	/ الحقيقة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
talk	يتحدث	talked	talked
die	يموت	died	died
kill	يقتل	killed	killed
test	يختبر / يفحص	tested	tested
change	يغير	changed	changed
save	ينقذ	saved	saved
get to	يصل الى	got to	got to

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

stay with	يقيم مع	find out	يكتشف	get better	
go for a walk	يذهب للتنزه مشيًا	come back	يعود	at the end	النهاية
by the river	بجوار النهر	agree with	يتفق مع	clean up	
at dinner	على العشاء	take photos	يلتقط صورًا	look at	

Help your child identify these words.

طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (5)

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Reporter Nadine saves the river

Every year, Nadine went to stay with her aunt, uncle, and cousin, Remas, at their home. It was a **peaceful** place near a river. She and her cousin always went for walks by the river, and talked to the fishermen there.
Last year, when she visited, things were different. When Nadine got to the river, she saw dead fish in the water. It was very quiet there, too.
"Where are all the fishermen?" she asked her cousin.
"They've stopped coming here,"said Remas," and the fish are dying."
"But why?"asked Nadine.
"We don't know," said Remas.

في كل عام، كانت نادين تذهب لتقيم مع عمتها وعمها وابنة عمها ريماس في منزلهم. لقد كان مكانًا هادئًا بالقرب من النهر. كانت هي وابنة عمها تذهبان دائمًا للتنزه على ضفاف النهر، وتتحدثان مع الصيادين هناك. عندما زارتهم العام الماضي، كانت الأمور مختلفة. عندما وصلت نادين إلى النهر، رأت أسماكًا ميتة في الماء. كان الجو هادئًا جدًا هناك أيضًا.
سألت ابنة عمها "أين جميع الصيادين؟".
قالت ريماس: "لقد توقفوا عن المجيء إلى هنا، والأسماك تموت".
سألت نادين: "ولكن لماذا؟"
قالت ريماس: "لا نعرف".

They went home feeling sad. Nadine's uncle is the editor at the local newspaper.
"Uncle,"said Nadine at dinner,"I'd like to be a news reporter. Can I work for you? I want to find out why the fish are dying. We need to do something to protect the river, or it will be destroyed. All the fish will be killed, and the fishermen will never come back."
Uncle listened carefully, and agreed with Nadine. He went to the river with her the next day.
"Look at the color of the water," he said. "That tells me the water is polluted. There could be chemicals from factories or from farms. The chemicals are dangerous for wildlife. The wildlife will all be destroyed. I'd like you to write notes about the problem, and take some photos," he said.

عادوا إلى المنزل وهم يشعرون بالحزن. عم نادين هو رئيس تحرير إحدى الصحف المحلية.
قالت نادين على العشاء: "عمي، أود أن أكون مراسلة أخبار. هل يمكنني العمل لديك؟ أريد أن أعرف لماذا تموت الأسماك. علينا أن نفعل شيئًا لحماية النهر، وإلا سيتم تدميره. سيتم قتل جميع الأسماك، ولن يعود الصيادون أبدًا".
استمع العم بعناية، واتفق مع نادين. ذهب معها إلى النهر في اليوم التالي.
قال: "انظري إلى لون الماء". "هذا يخبرني أن المياه ملوثة. يمكن أن تكون هناك مواد كيميائية من المصانع أو من المزارع. المواد الكيميائية خطيرة على الحياة البرية. سيتم تدمير جميع الحياة البرية. وقال: "أود منك أن تكتبي ملاحظات حول المشكلة، وتلتقطي بعض الصور".

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Nadine and Uncle walked up the river and saw there were some factories a
farms. Then they went home, and Nadine wrote her notes for her news rep
Uncle read her notes and said, "This is very good, but you are going home
tomorrow. I promise I'll send my reporter to investigate this week. Your notes
be sent to her."

وسيرو وصعدوا إلى أعلى النهر ورأوا أن هناك بعض المصانع والمزارع. ثم عادوا إلى المنزل، وكتبت نادين ملاحظاتها لتقريرها الإخباري. قرأ العم ملاحظاتها وقال: هذا جيد جداً، لكنك ستعودين إلى المنزل غداً. أعدك بأنني سأرسل مراسلتي الصحفية للتحقيق هذا الأسبوع. سيتم إرسال ملاحظاتك إليها."

One week later, Nadine woke up early in the morning. She went to the laptop
the living room and saw an email from her uncle. He told her to look at the
website of his newspaper.

And there it was – the full story of the polluted river! Uncle's reporter interview
people at the factory and on the farms. One of the farms was using a new
fertilizer that wasn't tested correctly. It was killing the plants on the land and t
fish in the river. The farmers changed their fertilizer very soon after. Now, t
land and the river are starting to get better.

بعد أسبوع، استيقظت نادين في الصباح الباكر. ذهبت إلى الكمبيوتر المحمول الموجود في غرفة المعيشة وشاهدت بريدًا إلكترونيًا من عمها. قال لها أن تنظر إلى الموقع الإلكتروني لصحيفته.

وكانت القصة الكاملة للنهر الملوث! أجرت مراسلة العم مقابلات مع الناس في المصنع وفي المزارع. كانت إحدى المزارع تستخدم سمادًا جديدًا لم يتم اختباره بشكل صحيح. كان يقتل النباتات الموجودة على الأرض والأسماك في النهر. قام المزارعون بتغيير الأسمدة الخاصة بهم بعد فترة وجيزة. بدأت الأرض والنهر في التحسن.

Nadine was so pleased to read the article. She was also very happy when s
read in the paragraph at the end, "Thanks very much to our young reporter,
Nadine Shawky. Nadine helped to save our river by asking us to investigate
why the fish were dying. Now, the
river will be cleaned up. The fish will
be healthy again!"

نادين كانت سعيدة جداً بقراءة المقال، كما شعرت بسعادة غامرة عندما قرأت في الفقرة في النهاية "شكرا جزيلا لمراسلتنا الشابة نادين شوقي. ساعدت نادين في إنقاذ نهرنا عندما طلبت منا التحقيق في سبب موت الأسماك. الآن سيتم تنظيف النهر. سوف تعود الأسماك بصحة جيدة مرة أخرى"



Help your child listen and read.

طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ



The Future Simple Passive

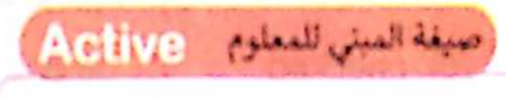
زمن المستقبل البسيط في صيغة المبني للمجهول

Usage الاستخدام

- **We often use the future simple passive "will be + P.P" in newspapers and TV reports.**

نستخدم غالبًا صيغة المبني للمجهول في زمن المستقبل البسيط في الصحف والتقارير التلفزيونية

e.g. Now, the river will be cleaned up.



	Active صيغة المبني للمعلوم	Passive صيغة المبني للمجهول
Affirmative الإثبات	Subject (الفاعل) + will + inf. e.g. They will bring the parcel.	Object (مفعول) + will be + P.P. e.g. The parcel will be brought.
Negative النفي	Subject (الفاعل) + will + not + inf. e.g. She won't finish her homework.	Object (مفعول) + will not + be + P.P. e.g. Her homework won't be finished.
(Yes / No) question السؤال بهل	Will + subject (الفاعل) + inf. ? e.g. Will you eat fish?	Will + object (مفعول) + be + P.P...? e.g. Will fish be eaten by you?
Wh-question السؤال بأداة استفهام	Q.W + will + subject (الفاعل) + inf.? e.g. When will he visit the museum?	Q.W + will + object (مفعول) + be + P.P. ..? e.g. When will the museum be visited?

Help your child learn the future simple passive.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم زمن المستقبل البسيط في صيغة المبني للمجهول



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The fish will be ....
   a) kill b) kills c) killed d) killing
2. The wildlife in the river will .... destro
   a) am b) is c) are d) be
3. The reporter's article will .... by Nadine's un
   a) check b) checks c) checked d) be checke
4. The river will be ....
   a) clean b) cleaned c) cleans d) cleaning
5. The news stories .... printed in the newspa
   a) will b) will not c) will be d) can
6. Your notes .... be sent to
   a) will b) are c) were d) is
7. The chickens will .... every d
   a) feed b) fed c) be fed d) feeds
8. The parcel will be .... tomorr
   a) bring b) brought c) brings d) bringing

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets

1. The river will .... (is) saved from polluti
2. The trash will be .... (pick) u
3. New fish will .... (is) put in the riv
4. New plants will be .... (putting) at the side of the riv
5. Dangerous fertilizers .... (won't use) aga

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who did Nadine go to stay with?

....

2. Where's her aunt's home?

....

3. Who did the children talk to?

....

4. What did Nadine see in the river?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

website - notes - woke - promise - sent

Nadine and Uncle walked up the river and saw there were some factories and farms. Then they went home, and Nadine wrote her 1) .... for her news report. Uncle read her notes and said, "This is very good, but you are going home tomorrow. I 2) .... I'll send my reporter to investigate this week. Your notes will be 3) .... to her." One week later, Nadine 4) .... up early in the morning. She went to the laptop in the living room and saw an email from her uncle. He told her to look at the website of his newspaper.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My village is a very quiet and relaxing place. It is ....
   a) peaceful b) crowded c) busy d) noisy
2. My father .... to buy a new mobile for me.
   a) bought b) promised c) thought d) checked
3. Now, the river will be .... up.
   a) clean b) cleans c) cleaned d) cleaning
4. The wildlife will .... destroyed.
   a) am b) is c) are d) be
5. All the fish will be ....
   a) kill b) killed c) kills d) killing



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Every year, Malak went to stay with her grandparents at their villa
It was a peaceful place near a river. She and her grandfather always w
for walks by the river, and talked to the fishermen there. Last year, when s
visited, things were different. When Malak got to the river, she saw dead f
in the water. It was very quiet there, too. She went home feeling sad.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The opposite of the underlined word "peaceful" is ....

   a) relaxing b) quiet c) nice d) noisy

2. Malak went home feeling ....

   a) happy b) sad c) excited d) pleased

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did Malak see when she went to the river? ....
4. Who went for a walk with Malak? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Aya's - lives - a river - cousin - near - .

   ....

2. helps - My father - to - me - find - truth - the - .

   ....

3. be - The fish - killed - will - river - the - in -.

   ....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Helping the wildlife in the river

Guiding elements:

(river - clean - trash - pick up)

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

لك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (6) WRITING: A NEWS REPORT

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية


tug-of-war
لعبة شد الحبل


school science fair
معرض العلوم المدرسي


school talent show
عرض المواهب المدرسي


school bake sale
معرض المخبوزات المدرسية

Vocabulary كلمات

awesome	رائع	caption	تعليق على صورة
decorate	يزين	headline	عنوان رئيسي
area	منطقة	introduction	المقدمة
plan	يخطط	main text	نص رئيسي
race	سباق	newspaper's name	اسم الجريدة
winning team	الفريق الفائز	reporter's name	اسم كاتب التقرير
running	الجري	conclusion	الخاتمة
long jump	الوثب الطويل	director	مدير
high jump	الوثب العالي	photo	صورة
popular	محبوب	further details	تفاصيل أكثر
first place	المركز الأول	field	حقل - ملعب
luckily	لحسن الحظ	laugh	يضحك
sports day	يوم رياضي	tired	مُتعب

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

It was awesome!	كان رائعًا!	give out prizes	يوزع جوائز
It looked great!	بدت عظيمة!	proud of	فخور بـ
take part	يشارك - يشترك	work hard	يعمل بجد
such as	مثل	lots of	كثير من

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Look and read.

[1]MARLEY SCHOOL NEWS

[2]Best school sports day ever!

[3]


[4] The tug-of-war race at the end of the afternoon

[5] Our school sports day was last Thursday, 13 June. It was awesome! Mr Kamal's class decorated the sports area – it looked great! The older children in school planned all the races. We think all the parents loved it, too! Many girls and boys took part, and there were many different things to see. Lots of people watched the exciting football, volleyball, and basketball games. Well done to all the winning teams!

كان يومنا الرياضي المدرسي يوم الخميس الماضي 13 يونيه. رائعًا! قام صف الأستاذ كمال بتزيين المنطقة الرياضية - لقد بدت رائعة! خطط الأطفال الأكبر سنًا في المدرسة لجميع السباقات. نعتقد أن جميع الآباء أحبوها أيضًا! شارك العديد من الفتيات والفتيان، وكان هناك العديد من الأشياء المختلفة التي يمكن رؤيتها. شاهد الكثير من الناس مباريات كرة القدم والكرة الطائرة وكرة السلة المثيرة. حظًا سعيدًا لجميع الفرق الفائزة!

The races, such as the 100-me running, long jump, and high jum were popular, too. Reem, from Ye 3, won first place for her high jum Reem's highest jump was one meter! Luckily, the weather wa great for our sports day. The scho director, Mrs Dorriya, was very happy. At the end of the day, sh gave out prizes. She said, "I'm s proud of all of you – you worke so hard to make this day fantastic Then we ended the day with a fu tug-of-war in the field! We laughed lot and went home tired, but happ Our sports day was amazing!

[6] Story by Walee

ت السباقات، مثل جري 100 متر، والوثب الطويل، والوثب العالي عة أيضًا. حصلت ريم من الصف الثالث على المركز الأول في الوثب ي أعلى قفزة لريم كانت مترًا واحدًا! ولحسن الحظ، كان الطقس رائعًا نا الرياضي. وكانت مديرة المدرسة السيدة درية سعيدة للغاية. وفي ة اليوم قامت بتوزيع الجوائز. قالت: "أنا فخ... بكم جميعًا – عملتم بجد لجعل هذا اليوم رائعًا!" ثم أنهينا اليوم بلعبة شد الحبل متعة في الملعب! ضحكنا كثيرًا وعدنا إلى المنزل متعبين ولكن سعداء. نا الرياضي كان مذهلًا!

1)	newspaper's name	2)	headline	3)	photo
4)	caption	5)	main text	6)	reporter's name



Help your child look and read.

طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.

Look and read.

[1] Ibrahim School Newspaper

[2] School concert a success!

[3]


[4] Young violin players

[5] Our school concert was on Saturday. It was amazing! Miss Laila's class put 150 chairs in the school hall and tickets were sold on the school website. Mr Amir's class decorated the hall with flowers. Everyone was very excited. Over 60 students were in the concert. There are 24 students in the orchestra. They play lots of different musical instruments including the violin, flute, guitar, and piano.

كان حفل مدرستنا الموسيقي يوم السبت. كان رائعًا! قام صف الأستاذة ليلى بوضع 150 كرسياً في قاعة المدرسة وتم بيع التذاكر على موقع المدرسة. قام صف الأستاذ أمير بتزيين القاعة بالورود. كان الجميع متحمسين للغاية. اشترك في الحفل الموسيقى أكثر من 60 طالبًا. هناك 24 طالبا في الأوركسترا. إنهم يعزفون على الكثير من الآلات الموسيقية المختلفة بما في ذلك الكمان والفلوت والجيتار والبيانو.

The choir has over 30 students from different years, but they all love music! The concert started at 5 pm. First, the school director Mrs Mariam gave a presentation. She said, "This is a very special evening and I'm very proud of everyone". Then the orchestra played classical music. It was fantastic! There was a break in the middle of the concert, and some students served cold drinks and cakes. Then in the second half of the concert, the orchestra played and the choir sang. It was an awesome evening, and everyone went home feeling happy.

[6] Story by Reem Mansour

يضم الكورال أكثر من 30 طالبًا من سنوات مختلفة، لكنهم جميعًا يحبون الموسيقى! بدأ الحفل في الساعة الخامسة مساءً. في البداية قدمت مديرة المدرسة السيدة مريم عرضًا تقديميًا. وقالت: "هذه أمسية خاصة جدًا وأنا فخورة جدًا بالجميع". ثم عزفت الأوركسترا الموسيقى الكلاسيكية. كانت رائعة! وكانت هناك استراحة وسط الحفل، وقام بعض الطلاب بتقديم المشروبات الباردة والكعك. ثم في النصف الثاني من الحفل عزفت الأوركسترا وقام الكورال بالغناء. لقد كانت أمسية رائعة، وعاد الجميع إلى منازلهم وهم يشعرون بالسعادة.

1)	newspaper's name	2)	headline	3)	photo
4)	caption	5)	main text	6)	reporter's name

Tip — Writiing a news report

- To write the main text of the news report, follow this structure:

لكتابة النص الرئيسي للتقرير الإخباري، اتبع هذا الشكل:

Introduction المقدمة — In this paragraph, we give important information about the event. It can answer who, what, why, where, and when questions.

في هذه الفقرة نقدم معلومات مهمة عن الحدث. يمكنه الإجابة عن أسئلة من وماذا ولماذا وأين ومتى.

Further details تفاصيل أكثر — In this paragraph, we give more details about the event.

في هذه الفقرة سنقدم المزيد من التفاصيل حول الحدث.

Conclusion الخاتمة — In this paragraph, we give final information and opinions.

في هذه الفقرة نعطي المعلومات والآراء النهائية.

- Write in the past tense: اكتب في الزمن الماضي:

e.g. Our school sports day was last Thursday.

- Use direct quotes from people who were at the event:

استخدم اقتباسات مباشرة من الأشخاص الذين كانوا في الحدث:

e.g. "I'm so proud of all of you – you worked so hard to make today fantastic."

- Include your opinion by using adjectives: تضمين رأيك باستخدام الصفات:

e.g. Our sports day was amazing.

A school talent show

MARLEY SCHOOL NEWS

Best school talent show ever!



The song at the end of the afternoon

Our school talent show was last Monday, 1 May. It was awesome! Mr Tarek's class decorated the area – it looked great! The older children in school planned all the shows. We think all the parents loved it, too! Many girls and boys took part, and there were many different things to see. Lots of people watched the lovely, acting and dancing. Well done to all the winning teams! Habiba, from Year 3, won first place for singing. The school director, Mrs Mona, was very happy. At the end of the day, she gave out prizes. She said, "I'm so proud of all of you – you worked so hard to make this day fantastic!" Then we ended the day with a nice song.

Story by Ahmad



Help your child learn how to write a news report.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يكتب تقرير إخباري.



Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. When was your school sports day?

....

2. How was that day?

....

3. What did Mr Kamal's class do?

....

4. Who loved the sports day?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

amazing - director - tired - worked - out

Luckily, the weather was great for our sports day. The school ...., Mrs Dorriya, was very happy. At the end of the day, she gave .... prizes. She said, "I'm so proud of all of you – you 3)........................ so hard to make this day fantastic!" Then we ended the day with a fun ug-of-war in the field! We laughed a lot and went home 4)........................, but happy. Our sports day was amazing!

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. think - **We** - , too - the - all - parents - it - loved - .

....

2. people - of - **Lots** - the - watched - exciting - games - .

....

3. sports - **Our** - amazing - day - was - !

....

4. was - happy - **The school** - very - director - .

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Our school sports day was last Thursday, 13 June. It was aweso Mr Kamal's class decorated the sports area – it looked <u>great</u>! The o children in school planned all the races. We think all the parents love too! Many girls and boys took part, and there were many different thing see. Lots of people watched the exciting football, volleyball, and basketball games. Well done to all the winning teams! The races, such the 100-meter running, long jump, and high jump were popular, too. Re from Year 3, won first place for her high jump. Reem's highest jump one meter!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about school ....
   a) sports day b) library c) playground d) bake sale
2. The underlined word "great" means ....
   a) bad b) ugly c) fantastic d) high

B) Answer the following questions.

3. When was your school sports day? ....
4. What did lots of people watch? ....



5 Write a report of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Guiding elements: **School science fair**

(14 June - do experiments - took part)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (7) STORY: FARMER SAMEH

Definitions تعريفات

barn	a building on a farm for animals to sleep in	حظيرة
fall	the time in the year when the leaves fall from the trees	فصل الخريف
shade	a dark area with no sunlight	ظل
summer	the hottest season of the year	فصل الصيف

Vocabulary الكلمات

wife	زوجة	dates	تمور	bright	لامع
land	أرض	desserts	حلوى	wooden	خشبي
enough	كاف	female	أنثى	terrible	فظيع
sheep	أغنام	safe	آمن	storm	عاصفة
fava beans	فول	bricks	طوب	space	مساحة
honey	عسل	summary	ملخص	moral	مغزى
figs	تين	season	فصل / موسم	sunlight	ضوء الشمس

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
save	ينقذ	saved	saved
shout	يصيح	shouted	shouted
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
keep	يربي	kept	kept
think	يعتقد	thought	thought
shine	تشرق	shone	shone
burn	يحترق	burned / burnt	burned / burnt
sit	يجلس	sat	sat

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look after	يعتني بـ	important to	هام لـ	burn down	يحترق
have a baby	تلد	at all	على الإطلاق	at the start	في بداية
worry about	يقلق بشأن	stay in	يمكث في	in the end	في النهاية
made of	مصنوع من	on farm	في المزرعة	sleep in	ينام في

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

Farmer Sameh



Farmer Sameh had a very happy life. He lived on a farm with his wife, Amina, and his children, Monir and Menna. They didn't have a lot of land, but they had enough to grow food to eat and a little to sell at the market. Sameh kept sheep and chickens, and the children helped him look after them. Amina grew fava beans so she could make delicious ful mudamas. Monir and Menna had some bees, so they could have honey. With the honey, and the figs and dates from their trees, they could make awesome desserts.

زارع سامح يعيش حياة سعيدة جداً. كان يعيش في مزرعة مع زوجته أمينة وأولاده منير ومنة. لم يكن لديهم الكثير من الأراضي، لكن كان لديهم ما زراعة الطعام ليأكلوه والقليل لبيعه في السوق. كان سامح يربي الأغنام والدجاج، وكان الأطفال يساعدونه في رعايتهم. قامت أمينة بزراعة الفول تمكن من إعداد الفول المدمس اللذيذ. كان لدى منير ومنة بعض النحل حتى يتمكنوا من الحصول على العسل. باستخدام العسل والتين والتمر جارهم، يمكنهم صنع حلويات رائعة.

The family had an old **barn** where they kept the sheep. It was very important cold and rainy days, or when the female sheep were having babies. Sameh friends, Hazem and Fareed, were worried about the barn. They thought it wa too old and not safe. "Sameh," said Hazem, "your barn is very old and made wood – it could easily burn."

"Why don't you build a better barn from bricks?" asked Hazem.

Sameh replied, "Because this year, I need to buy more sheep."

That year, **summer** was very hot. There was no rain at all. The sun shone ever day, and the sky was bright blue. The wooden barn got very hot from the sun One day, it started burning. Sameh was at the market, but luckily, Amina was near and she saved the sheep from the barn. Hazem and Fareed came running

لدى العائلة حظيرة قديمة حيث كانوا يربون الأغنام. كان ذلك مهمًا جدًا في الأيام الباردة والممطرة، أو عندما تلد الأغنام.

أصدقاء سامح، حازم وفريد، قلقين بشأن الحظيرة. ظنوا أنها قديمة جدًا وغير آمنة. قال حازم: "سامح، حظيرتك قديمة جدًا ومصنوعة من الخشب، يمكن أن تحترق بسهولة".

قال حازم: "لماذا لا تبني حظيرة أفضل من الطوب؟"

أجاب سامح: «لأنني هذا العام بحاجة لشراء المزيد من الأغنام».

في ذلك العام، كان الصيف حارا جدًا. لم يكن هناك مطر على الإطلاق. كانت الشمس تشرق كل يوم، وكانت السماء زرقاء زاهية. أصبحت الحظيرة الخشبية شديدة الحرارة بسبب الشمس. وفي أحد الأيام، بدأت تحترق. كان سامح في السوق، لكن لحسن الحظ كانت أمينة قريبة وأنقذت الأغنام من الحظيرة. ركض حازم وفريد.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

"Get some water from the kitchen!" shouted Hazem to the children. "We need to save the barn!" But Amina wasn't worried. Everybody and all the animals were safe. After the barn burned down, they all sat and drank water. Fareed asked, "Where will you put the sheep now?"

صاح حازم على الأطفال: "أحضروا بعض الماء من المطبخ!" "نحن بحاجة لإنقاذ الحظيرة!" لكن أمينة لم تكن قلقة. كل الأشخاص وجميع الحيوانات كانوا آمنين. بعد أن احترقت الحظيرة، جلسوا جميعًا وشربوا الماء. فسأل فريد: "أين ستضع الأغنام الآن؟"

Amina replied, "We have some trees, so they can stay in the **shade** until the new barn is ready."

"Will you build another barn?" asked Hazem.

"Oh yes," said Amina, "it'll be fine."

Sameh and his family worked hard through the summer. They built a new, bigger barn with bricks. In the **fall**, the new barn was ready. It was big enough for all their sheep. Their friends came to see the new barn.

"Well done," said Hazem.

"This new barn is great," said Fareed.

Later that year, there was a terrible storm.

Sameh and Amina put the sheep in the new barn. Hazem and Fareed came running with their sheep.

"Please can we put our sheep here?" Hazem asked.

"Yes, of course," said Amina.

"There's lots of space," Sameh said.

"I was sad and worried when our old barn burned down. Now, we have this big, fantastic barn!"

Everybody laughed and agreed.

فأجابت أمينة: "لدينا بعض الأشجار، لذا يمكنهم البقاء في الظل حتى تصبح الحظيرة الجديدة جاهزة."

سأل حازم: "هل ستبنون حظيرة أخرى؟"

قالت أمينة: "أوه نعم، سيكون الأمر على ما يرام".

عمل سامح وعائلته بجد خلال فصل الصيف. قاموا ببناء حظيرة جديدة أكبر بالطوب. وفي الخريف، كانت الحظيرة الجديدة جاهزة. وكانت كبيرة بما يكفي لجميع أغنامهم. جاء أصدقاؤهم لرؤية الحظيرة الجديدة.

قال حازم: "أحسنت".

قال فريد: "هذه الحظيرة الجديدة رائعة".

وفي وقت لاحق من ذلك العام، حدثت عاصفة رهيبة.

وضع سامح وأمينة الأغنام في الحظيرة الجديدة. جاء حازم وفريد يركضون مع غنمهم.

سأل حازم: "من فضلك هل يمكننا وضع أغنامنا هنا؟"

قالت أمينة: "نعم، بالطبع".

قال سامح: «هناك مساحة كبيرة».

"شعرت بالحزن والقلق عندما احترقت حظيرتنا القديمة. الآن، لدينا هذه الحظيرة الكبيرة والرائعة!

ضحك الجميع ووافقوا على كلامي.

Listen and read.



An old man was sitting in the shade of his favorite tree. He saw a young man walking towards him. The young man stopped and asked the old man a question. "Do you know the people in this village? What are they like?" he said.

كان رجل عجوز يجلس في ظل شجرته المفضلة. رأى شاباً يتجه نحوه. توقف الشاب وسأل الرجل العجوز سؤالاً. وقال "هل تعرف الناس في هذه القرية؟ كيف يبدون؟"

The old man looked at him and replied, "What are the people like in the villag come from?"

الرجل العجوز وأجاب: "كيف حال الناس في القرية التي أتيت منها؟"

"Oh, they are unfriendly. I don't talk to them," said the young man.

غير ودودين. قال الشاب: "أنا لا أتحدث معهم".

"I think you'll find the people in this village are the same," said the old man qui

العجوز بهدوء: "أعتقد أنك ستجد الناس في هذه القرية نفس الشيء".

The young man looked upset. He said goodbye and walked slowly to the vil

مستاء. قال وداعا ومشى ببطء إلى القرية.

The next day, while the old man was sitting in the shade of his favorite tree, he another young man walking towards him. The young man stopped and aske old man a question. "Do you know the people in this village? What are they lik

التالي، وبينما كان الرجل العجوز يجلس في ظل شجرته المفضلة، رأى شابًا آخر يسير نحوه. توقف الشاب وسأل الرجل العجوز سؤالاً. "هل الناس في هذه القرية؟ كيف حالهم؟"

The old man looked at him and replied, "What are the people like in the village come from?"

إليه الرجل العجوز وأجاب: "كيف حال الناس في القرية التي أتيت منها؟"

"Oh, they are very friendly and kind. I talk to all of them and I like them a lot," s the young man.

الشاب: "أوه، إنهم ودودون ولطيفون للغاية. "أتحدث معهم جميعًا وأحبهم كثيرًا".

"I think you'll find the people in this village are the same," said the old man quie

الرجل العجوز بهدوء: "أعتقد أنك ستجد الناس في هذه القرية نفس الشيء."

The young man smiled happily. He said goodbye and walked quickly to the villa

الشاب بسعادة وودعه ومشى بسرعة إلى القرية

Help your child listen and read.

يمكنك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

ملحق الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What does Sameh do?

....

2. Where does he live?

....

3. What did Sameh keep?

....

4. What could Amina do with fava beans?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

school - market - shone - barn - rain

That year, summer was very hot. There was no 1) .... at all. The sun 2) .... every day, and the sky was bright blue. The wooden 3) .... got very hot from the sun. One day, it started burning. Sameh was at the 4) .... , but luckily, Amina was near and she saved the sheep from the barn.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. " .... " is a building on a farm for animals to sleep in.
   a) Barn b) Cage c) Box d) Cave
2. " .... " is the time in the year when leaves fall from the trees.
   a) Summer b) Spring c) Winter d) Fall
3. " .... " is a dark area with no sunlight.
   a) Shape b) Shade c) Shame d) Show
4. " .... " is the hottest season of the year.
   a) Spring b) Fall c) Summer d) Winter
5. Bad news can become good news .... the end.
   a) in b) of c) on d) for

Writing Corner

A garage sale

Every year we have a garage sale at our school. This means volunteers from our school all bring in old items like clothes, books, toy kitchen equipment. These items are old, but they are still in good shape can be used again. These items are sold to anyone who would like to them. The money we collect is used to help children who need health in hospitals. We also buy some new toys and take them to the children our teachers. Everyone is really happy!

The cheetahs

Cheetahs, the fastest animals in the world, have returned to Indi They lived in India until the 1950s, but then slowly disappeared. Howe much later, eight of them were brought to a big park in India – Kuno National Park. The Indian people are very pleased to have these anin back in their country. The cheetahs now live in a safe area, where they fed every day. They aren't watched all the time, but they are tracked they don't get lost.

A school sports day

Best school sports day ever!



The tug-of-war race at the end of the afternoon

Our school sports day was last Sunday, 20 May. It was awesome! Mr Kamal's class decorated the sports area – it looked great! The older children in school planned all the races. We think all the parents loved it, too!

Luckily, the weather was great our sports day. The school direc Mrs Mona, was very happy. At end of the day, she gave out priz She said, "I'm so proud of all of – you worked so hard to make day fantastic!" Then we ended day with a fun tug-of-war in the fie We laughed a lot and went ho tired, but happy. Our sports day amazing!

Story by

Help your child write paragraphs.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرات.

Review on Unit (6)

Vocabulary

garage sale	معرض للأشياء المستعملة	journalism	الصحافة
equipment	معدات	journalist	صحفي
responsible	مسؤول	breaking news	أخبار عاجلة
vaccinations	تطعيمات - أمصال	staff	طاقم العمل - هيئة الموظفين
editor	محرر- رئيس تحرير	sociable	شخص اجتماعي
volunteers	متطوعون	peaceful	هادئ / مريح
hutch	قفص "أرنب"	promise	يعد
check on	يفحص - يطمئن على	investigate	يحقق
newspaper	جريدة	tug-of-war	لعبة شد الحبل
cheetah	الفهد الصياد	school science fair	معرض العلوم المدرسي
India	دولة الهند	school talent show	عرض المواهب المدرسي
Indians	الهنود	school bake sale	معرض المخبوزات المدرسية
giant panda	الباندا العملاقة	barn	حظيرة
news	أخبار	fall	فصل الخريف
bamboo	خيزران - البامبو	summer	فصل الصيف
international	عالمي - دولي	shade	ظل

Good news phrases عبارات خاصة بالأخبار الجيدة		**Bad news phrases** عبارات خاصة بالأخبار السيئة	
Oh, wow! That's great!	أوه، واو! هذا رائع!	Oh, no! That's too bad!	أوه لا! هذا سيء للغاية!
That's amazing news!	هذه أخبار مدهشة!	Better luck next time.	حظًا أوفر المرة القادمة.
I'm so pleased for you!	أنا مسرور جدًا لك!	I'm sorry to hear that!	أنا حزين لسماع ذلك!
Well done!	أحسنت!	What a pity!	يا للأسف!



The Past Simple Passive

زمن الماضي البسيط في صيغة المبني للمجهول

Affirmative — Object (مفعول) + was / were + P.P.

e.g. Bamboo was eaten by pandas.

Negative — Object (مفعول) + was / were + not + P.P.

e.g. The panda wasn't fed.

Question

(Yes / No) question:

Was / Were + object (مفعول) + P.P...?

e.g. Were the videos posted by Ali?

Wh–question:

Q.W + was / were + object (مفعول) + P.P...?

e.g. Where was the giant panda found?

The Future Simple Passive

زمن المستقبل البسيط في صيغة المبني للمجهول

Affirmative — Object (مفعول) + will + be + P.P.

e.g. The parcel will be brought.

Negative — Object (مفعول) + will + not + be + P.P.

e.g. Her homework won't be finished.

Question

(Yes / No) question:

Will + object (مفعول) + be + P.P...?

Will fish be eaten?

Wh–question:

Q.W + will + object (مفعول) + be + P.P...?

e.g. When will the museum be visited?



Dictation on Unit (6)

Lesson (1)

متطوع …………………	معرض للأشياء المستعملة …………………
قفص …………………	معدات …………………
يفحص - يطمئن على …………………	مسؤول …………………
جريدة …………………	تطعيمات - أمصال …………………

Lesson (2)

أخبار …………………	الفهد الصياد …………………
دب الباندا العملاق …………………	دولة الهند …………………
خيزران - البامبو …………………	الهنود …………………

Lesson (3)

أحسنت! …………………	أوه، واو! هذا رائع! …………………
حظًا أوفر المرة القادمة …………………	أوه لا! هذا سيء للغاية! …………………

Lesson (4)

صحفي …………………	عالمي - دولي …………………
طاقم العمل …………………	الصحافة …………………
شخص اجتماعي …………………	أخبار عاجلة …………………

Lesson (5)

يعد …………………	هادئ / مريح …………………
مواد كيميائية	يحقق …………………

Lesson (6)

معرض العلوم المدرسي …………………	لعبة شد الحبل …………………
عرض المواهب المدرسي …………………	معرض المخبوزات المدرسية …………………

Lesson (7)

فصل الخريف …………………	حظيرة …………………
فصل الصيف …………………	ظل …………………

Help your child dictate these words.
ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات

Exam on Unit (6)

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where does the rabbit Crunchy live?

....

2. What food does the rabbit love?

....

3. What does the class do with the rabbit?

....

4. Why does the vet come once a week?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

put - protected - bamboo - destroyed - conservation

Sadly, some years ago, giant pandas were put in danger. Much of habitat was 1)........................ to build new homes. Their habitat wasn't prote Pandas only eat 2)........................, which was cut down for the houses. people were very worried, so the pandas were put into special areas, they were 3)........................ They were given as much bamboo as they coul This 4)........................ work has been very successful. In the 1980s, there only around 1,200 giant pandas. Now there are almost 2,000!

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Farmer Sameh had a very happy life. He lived on a farm with his wife Amina, and his children, Monir and Menna. They didn't have a lot of land they had enough to grow food to eat and a little to sell at the market. Sameh sheep and chickens, and the children helped him look after them. Amina g fava beans so she could make delicious ful mudamas. The family had an barn where they kept the sheep. It was very important on cold and rainy d or when the female sheep were having babies. Sameh's friends, Hazem Fareed, were worried about the barn. They thought it was too old and not s They advised Sameh to build a new one from bricks.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Sameh had a very ....

a) busy b) sad c) happy d) bad

2. The opposite of the underlined word "safe" is ....

a) dangerous b) happy c) delicious d) little

I following questions.

3. Why did Amina grow fava beans? ....

4. What was Sameh's friends' advice? ....

4 The Reader:

I YES or NO.

1. Hatem read everybody's writing. (................)
2. Bassant reported on the sports games. (................)

B) Read and answer the questions.

3. Who was the newspaper team's photographer? ....
4. Why was the family lived near the school sad? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The cheetahs aren't .... every day.

a) feed b) feeds c) fed d) feeding

2. The bamboo .... down for the pandas to eat.

a) was cut b) were cut c) was cutting d) were cutting

3. A letter will .... tomorrow.

a) send b) sent c) be sent d) sending

4. Will more things be .... online in the future?

a) sell b) sells c) sold d) selling

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Giant - love - pandas - bamboo - eating - . ...
2. was - Heba - last - Why - excited - Monday - ? ....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

The life of a journalist

Guiding elements:

(international - newspaper - journalism)

Exam on Review (3)

...ستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What was Omar's job? ....
2. What happened to Omar? ....
3. What did doctors do to Omar in the hospital? ....
4. Who did Omar hear about? ....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

woke - off - picked - in - figured

I've just got back from Luxor! When we got to Luxor, we filled 1).............. the form at the hotel, and went to our room. It was very nice and comforta... Mom 2).............................. me up early so we could visit my uncle. He lives outs... the city, so we left at 7 am. We 3).............................. out a good route, and enjoy... the countryside. We loved being at Uncle's house, and had a delicious lun... there. On the way back to Luxor, we dropped 4).............................. Uncle's frien... the bus stop. It was a fun day. I wish we lived nearer to Uncle, so we could s... him more often!

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Junko Tabei was a famous and brave adventurer , who did every challenge s... could. She loved climbing mountains and was the first woman to climb Mount Evere... She was born in 1939, and at that time, girls didn't usually do outdoor activities. B... she trained hard on the mountains from the age of ten! As Junko grew up, she became more ambitious , and tried higher and higher mountains! She became fascinated by English, and started learning the language. She then learned ma... textbooks in English about climbing. Junko was also very sociable – she enjoye... making friends, and helped other women to become climbers, too. She knew about a... kinds of dangerous weather on mountains, including avalanches . This is when sno... high up falls down the mountain – it can be very frightening.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Junko Tabei was a famous and brave ....

   a) adventurer b) editor c) sailor d) player

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

2. The underlined word "started" means ....

a) ended b) began c) went d) took

B) Answer the following questions.

3. When was Junko Tabei born? ....

4. How did Junko Tabei help other women? ....

4 The Reader:

A) Read and write YES or NO.

1. Bassant went on a school trip with her class to the zoo. (.....................)
2. Hatem went to check the paper for printing. (.....................)

B) Read and answer the questions.

3. What did the newspaper team make to find the cat? ....
4. Where was Mr Medhat? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. How often .... the animals fed?

a) are b) is c) was d) will

2. Mom woke me .... early yesterday.

a) in b) on c) up d) at

3. The homework won't be .... this evening.

a) finish b) finishes c) finished d) finishing

4. Pandas were .... as much bamboo as they could eat.

a) give b) gives c) gave d) given

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. the challenges - What - of - were - the trip - ? ....
2. become - can - Bad news - in - good news - the end - . ...

7 Write an email of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Your visit to Luxor to your friend's email address is Ali@gmail.com. Your name is Hani and your email address is Hani@gmail.com.

Guiding elements: **(hotel - comfortable - lunch)**



Work with a partner. Label the parts of the newspaper.

caption - headline - newspaper's name - photo - reporter's name

1 .... 2 ....

Darsy Primary School News

Volleyball team wins again!

3 ....



4 ....—*Team celebrating their win*

Our volleyball team won their game yesterday. They played the team from Dot Hilland School. This means they are now in second place. If they win their next game, they will be the winners for the whole of the town. If you can, please go to see them play in the final next Saturday and support them! They are doing so well!

Story by Gameela Hamdy

5 ....

New drama group after school

The new drama group have been rehearsing in the gym after school on Thursdays. They have chosen a surprise play for the new term!

Science corner: new equipment arrives

The Head of Science has announced that the new DNA Helix Activity models have been delivered and are available for use in the Science room.

Video game review

Last week, I tried out the new Super City video game. I really liked it. The stories are very interesting, and I thought the one called Adventurers in Space was great. We can play as the main character, so I felt as if I was really traveling on a spaceship. The only thing I didn't like was the music – it was a bit slow and boring.

Overall, I give Super City 4 out of 5 stars.



Cooking corner



Delicious shawerma for your family

Ingredients: chicken, yogurt, garlic, chilies, lemons, spices, vinegar, vegetable oil

Method: Cut the chicken into small slices, then put two teaspoonfuls of spices on it, a cup of yogurt, and some vinegar. Mix this well, then put it in the fridge for at least four hours. Fry the garlic and chilies in a large pan with some vegetable oil, then add the chicken and stir well for five minutes. Turn the heat down, and keep the chicken on the stove until it is well-cooked. Add some water if you need to.

Puzzle page

Go to page 4 to find six foods in the wordsearch!

NON-FICTION READER

THE SILK ROAD

Listen and read.





Today, it's easy to buy and sell **goods** in different parts of the world. When we want to move things from one country to another, we can use big ships, fast trains, trucks, or planes. Because of the internet, we can shop in stores that are a long way from our homes. However, many years ago, it was difficult to buy and sell things from far away.

اليوم، أصبح من السهل شراء وبيع البضائع في أجزاء مختلفة من العالم. عندما نريد نقل الأشياء من بلد إلى آخر، يمكننا استخدام السفن الكبيرة أو القطارات السريعة أو الشاحنات أو الطائرات. بفضل الإنترنت، أصبح بإمكاننا التسوق في المتاجر البعيدة عن منازلنا. ومع ذلك، منذ سنوات عديدة، كان من الصعب شراء وبيع الأشياء من أماكن بعيدة.

The **Silk** Road changed this. In 130 BCE, a **trade route** was opened from Xi'an, a large, rich city in China. Over time, it reached the Mediterranean Sea. Today, we call it the Silk Road, but it was actually a number of routes covering nearly 6,500 kilometers. These routes went through many countries and different types of land, across deserts and mountains. The Silk Road was very important for over 1,500 years.

لقد غير طريق الحرير هذا. وفي عام 130 قبل الميلاد، تم افتتاح طريق تجاري من شيآن، وهي مدينة كبيرة وغنية في الصين. ومع مرور الوقت، وصلت إلى البحر الأبيض المتوسط. اليوم، نسميه طريق الحرير، لكنه كان في الواقع عبارة عن عدد من الطرق التي تغطي ما يقرب من 6.500 كيلومتر. مرت هذه الطرق عبر العديد من البلدان وأنواع مختلفة من الأراضي، عبر الصحاري والجبال. كان طريق الحرير مهمًا جدًا لأكثر من 1.500 عام.

The Silk Road has its name because people traded silk between China, in the east, and the countries we now know as Europe, in the west. Silk was a very expensive material, and at first, it was only made in China. The Silk Road made it possible for people in other countries to buy it for the first time. Many other things were traded on the Silk Road, too. From China, people also sold things

such as **precious stones**, perfumes, tea, and spices. From Europe, peo
sold things such as horses, wool, silver, olive oil, and items made from glas

طريق الحرير بهذا الاسم لأن الناس كانوا يتاجرون بالحرير بين الصين، في الشرق، والدول التي نعرفها الآن باسم أوروبا، في الغرب.
حرير مادة باهظة الثمن، وفي البداية كان يُصنع فقط في الصين. لقد أتاح طريق الحرير للناس في البلدان الأخرى شرائه لأول مرة.
اول العديد من الأشياء الأخرى على طريق الحرير أيضًا. ومن الصين، باع الناس أيضًا أشياء مثل الأحجار الكريمة والعطور والشاي
بل. ومن أوروبا، باع الناس أشياء مثل الخيول والصوف والفضة وزيت الزيتون والأشياء المصنوعة من الزجاج.

Traveling on the Silk Road was hard. The roads were sometimes old and dangerous, and people had to be very experienced to cross the deserts. Camels were an important form of transportation because they could travel long distances in hot, dry weather. Sometimes, people tried to steal money or goods, and it was safer for traders to travel in large groups, calle caravans.

لسفر على طريق الحرير أمرًا صعبًا. وكانت الطرق في بعض الأحيان قديمة وخطيرة، وكان على الناس أن يتمتعوا بخبرة كبيرة لعبور
حاري. كانت الجمال وسيلة نقل مهمة لأنها تستطيع السفر لمسافات طويلة في الطقس الحار والجاف. في بعض الأحيان، حاول
ى سرقة الأموال أو البضائع، وكان من الأكثر أمانًا للتجار السفر في مجموعات كبيرة تسمى القوافل.

However, the Silk Road was important for more than just buying and sellin goods. **Traders** met people from other cultures when they traveled to new places. This meant that they shared ideas and things from their culture, such as food, music, and crafts. For example, paper was an invention fron China that traveled around the world. Some people studied the stars, and they taught other people what they knew.

ذلك، كان طريق الحرير مهمًا لأكثر من مجرد بيع وشراء البضائع. كان التجار يلتقون بأشخاص من ثقافات أخرى عندما سافروا إلى
ن جديدة. وهذا يعني أنهم شاركوا الأفكار والأشياء من ثقافتهم، مثل الطعام والموسيقى والحرف اليدوية. على سبيل المثال، كان الورق
اعًا من الصين وانتقل في كل أنحاء العالم. درس بعض الناس النجوم، ولذلك علموا الآخرين ما يعرفونه.

Lots of places and buildings, have an interesting history because of the Si Road. Many towns along the routes became rich, important cities, such a Constantinople (now Istanbul) and Damascus. Large **inns** – or caravansera – were built as places for travelers to eat and rest, too.

Nowadays, it's easy and quick to move goods, but the Silk Road made it possible for countries to trade goods and share ideas, over 2,000 years ag

ع الكثير من الأماكن والمباني بتاريخ مثير للاهتمام بسبب طريق الحرير. أصبحت العديد من البلدات الواقعة على طول الطرق مدنًا
ة ومهمة، مثل القسطنطينية (إسطنبول حاليًا) ودمشق. تم بناء النزل الكبيرة - أو الخانات - لتكون أماكن للمسافرين لتناول الطعام
احة أيضًا. في الوقت الحاضر، أصبح نقل البضائع أمرًا سهلاً وسريعًا، لكن طريق الحرير جعل من الممكن للدول تبادل السلع وتبادل
كار، منذ أكثر من 2.000 عام!

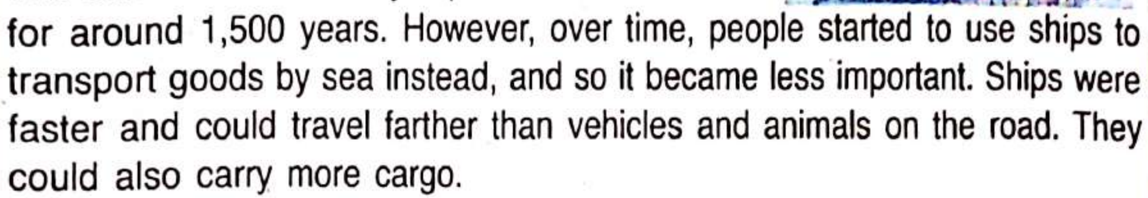
Help your child listen and read.

طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Listen and read.

Transportation today

وسائل النقل اليوم



The Silk Road was a very important trade route for around 1,500 years. However, over time, people started to use ships to transport goods by sea instead, and so it became less important. Ships were faster and could travel farther than vehicles and animals on the road. They could also carry more cargo.

كان طريق الحرير طريقًا تجاريًا مهمًا جدًا لنحو 1.500 عام. ومع ذلك، مع مرور الوقت، بدأ الناس في استخدام السفن لنقل البضائع عن طريق البحر بدلاً من ذلك، وبالتالي أصبح أقل أهمية. كانت السفن أسرع ويمكنها السفر لمسافة أبعد من المركبات والحيوانات على الطريق. يمكنهم أيضًا حمل المزيد من البضائع.

For many years, people made very long, and sometimes dangerous,journeys by sea from Asia, around the continent of Africa, to Europe. However, in 1869, the Suez Canal was opened to help with this problem. It was built to make a much quicker sea route from the Red Sea, in Asia, to the Mediterranean Sea. It connected Port Said, on the Mediterranean Sea, with the city of Suez. The Suez Canal is about 193 kilometers long, and it makes the journey around 7,000 kilometers shorter!

لسنوات عديدة، كان الناس يقومون برحلات بحرية طويلة جدًا، وفي بعض الأحيان خطيرة من آسيا و حول قارة أفريقيا و إلى أوروبا. ومع ذلك، في عام 1869، تم فتح قناة السويس للمساعدة في حل هذه المشكلة. تم بناؤها لإنشاء طريق بحري أسرع بكثير من البحر الأحمر في آسيا إلى البحر الأبيض المتوسط. وكانت تربط مدينة بورسعيد على البحر الأبيض المتوسط بمدينة السويس. يبلغ طول قناة السويس حوالي 193 كيلومترًا، مما يجعل الرحلة أقصر بحوالي 7.000 كيلومترا!

Today, the Suez Canal is used by nearly 19,000 cargo ships a year, so it's a very important sea route for businesses. A lot of today's businesses are global.

واليوم، تستخدم قناة السويس ما يقرب من 19.000 سفينة شحن سنويًا، لذا فهي طريق بحري مهم جدًا للشركات. الكثير من الشركات التجارية اليوم عالمية.

This means that they trade with other businesses in countries all over the world. These businesses often use huge ships to export goods, to sell and move things to other countries. Goods that are exported from Egypt include cotton, rice, and onions. Goods can also be imported into a country. That is, they are bought from another country. Important goods that are imported into Egypt include some types of metal and paper.

وهذا يعني أنهم يتاجرون مع شركات أخرى في بلدان في جميع أنحاء العالم. غالبًا ما تستخدم هذه الشركات السفن الضخمة لتصدير البضائع وبيعها ونقل الأشياء إلى بلدان أخرى. وتشمل السلع التي يتم تصديرها من مصر القطن والأرز والبصل. يمكن أيضًا استيراد البضائع إلى بلد ما. أي يتم شراؤها من بلد آخر. ومن السلع الهامة التي يتم استيرادها إلى مصر بعض أنواع المعادن والورق.

Transportation and technology are changing all the time. As well as ships,we now have planes and fast trains to help move goods all around the world However, it looks like the Suez Canal will be important to us for a long time to come!

وسائل النقل والتكنولوجيا تتغير طوال الوقت. بالإضافة إلى السفن، لدينا الآن طائرات وقطارات سريعة للمساعدة في نقل البضائع في جميع أنحاء العالم. ومع ذلك، يبدو أن قناة السويس ستكون مهمة بالنسبة لنا لفترة طويلة قادمة!

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

1 Read and write YES or NO.

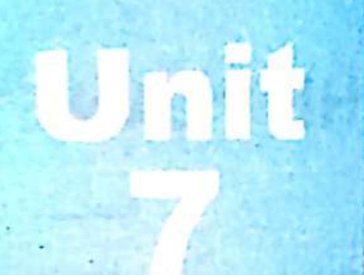
1. Ships could travel faster and farther than animals on the road. (......
2. The journey by sea, from Asia to Europe, was short and safe. (......
3. The Suez Canal is 2,000 kilometers long. (......
4. Today, about 19,000 cargo ships use the Suez Canal every year. (......
5. Egypt exports wool and rice and imports coal and paper. (......
6. Today, fast trains and planes are also used to transport cargo. (......
7. Silk was a very cheap material. (......
8. Paper was invented in England. (......
9. When large groups travel together, we call them caravans. (......
10. Huge cargo ships transport goods all around the world. (......
11. Ships could carry more cargo than animals. (......
12. The Suez Canal was important for businesses. (......
13. Transportation and technology are changing all the time. (......

2 Read and answer the questions.

1. Where did the Silk Road start? ....
2. What types of land did it cross? ....
3. What goods did people from China sell? ....
4. What goods did people from Europe sell? ....
5. Why was the Silk Road sometimes dangerous? ....
6. What things from their culture did people share? ....
7. How did the Silk Road change trade and culture in the past? ....
8. How has the Suez Canal changed trade and global culture today? ...

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل ...



Making a new world

صنع عالم جديد

In this unit, the students will ...

- read and find specific information. — يقرأ ويجد معلومات محددة.
- understand and use the second conditional. — يفهم ويستخدم الحالة الشرطية الثانية.
- listen for specific details. — يستمع إلى تفاصيل محددة.
- understand a sequence of events in a text. — يفهم تسلسل الأحداث في نص.
- understand and use (not) as ... as to compare. — يفهم ويستخدم (ليس ... مثل) للمقارنة.
- describe objects using sounds/looks/ feels like. — يصف الأشياء باستخدام (يبدو/يشبه/يشعر ك).
- write about a solution to a problem, including reasons. — يكتب عن حل لمشكلة مع ذكر الأسباب.
- understand key words and phrases in a story. — يفهم الكلمات والعبارات الأساسية في قصة.

Lesson (1) PEOPLE AND THE PLANET

Key vocabulary
كلمات أساسية

edible cutlery	أدوات المائدة الصالحة للأكل	glow-in-the-dark	منير في الظلام
bike path	مسار دراجات	filter straw	شفاطة الترشيح "لتنقية المياه"
decompose	يتحلل	bacteria	بكتيريا
prevent	يمنع	diseases	أمراض

Extra vocabulary
كلمات إضافية

inventions	اختراعات	ocean	محيط
blog	مدونة	popular	محبوب - مشهور
planet	كوكب	flour	دقيق
knives	سكاكين	environment	البيئة
spoons	ملاعق	safe	آمن
plastic	بلاستيك	comments	تعليقات
tasty	لذيذ	material	مادة خام
cycling	ركوب الدراجات	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
cyclists	راكبي الدراجات	dangerous	خطير

Definitions
تعريفات

bacteria	something that can cause disease	بكتيريا
decompose	to break into small parts	يتحلل
disease	a sickness	مرض
prevent	to stop something from happening	يمنع
store	to keep	يخزن

Great inventions
اختراعات رائعة

glow-in-the-dark bike path — This can help people cycle safely at night.

مسار دراجات منير في الظلام

edible cutlery — This is something that you can eat.

أدوات مائدة صالحة للأكل

filter straw — This can stop people getting sick. شفاطة الترشيح

Lesson (1)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
stay	يبقى - يمكث	stayed	stayed
glow	ينير - يضيء	glowed	glowed
store	يخزن	stored	stored
remove	يزيل	removed	removed
solve	يحل	solved	solved
cause	يسبب	caused	caused

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
know	يعرف	knew	known
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

welcome to	مرحبًا بكم في	in different flavors	بنكهات مختلفة
my own inventions	اختراعاتي	during the day	أثناء النهار
cool inventions	اختراعات رائعة	takeaway food	وجبات سريعة "جاهزة"
good for	مفيد لـ	bad for	ضار لـ
at night	ليلًا	in the ground	في الأرض
pass through	يمر خلال	for a long time	لمدة طويلة
fewer people	عدد أقل من الناس	get into	يدخل في
get sick	يمرض	a better idea	فكرة أفضل

Listen and read.

< > ⋮ ✗

People and our planet

الناس وكوكبنا



Welcome to my inventions blog! I love learning about inventions that help the planet. I really want to make my own inventions when I'm older. Here are some cool inventions you might not know about.

مرحبا بكم في مدونة الاختراعات الخاصة بي! أحب التعرف على الاختراعات التي تساعد الكوكب. أريد حقًا أن أصنع اختراعاتي الخاصة عندما أكبر. إليكم بعض الاختراعات الرائعة التي قد لا تعرفون عنها شيئًا.

Edible cutlery

Having takeaway food with friends and family is great. However, plastic knives, forks, and spoons are bad for the planet. We usually use plastic cutlery once, then throw it away. Plastic doesn't decompose, so it stays in the ground for a long time. Some plastic can then get into the ocean. Lots of people want to find a better idea, and cutlery that you can eat is becoming popular. This can be made with special rice, or flour, and some edible cutlery comes in different flavors, too!

أدوات المائدة الصالحة للأكل

إن تناول الوجبات الجاهزة مع الأصدقاء والعائلة أمر رائع. ومع ذلك، فإن السكاكين والشوك والملاعق البلاستيكية ضارة بالكوكب. عادة ما نستخدم أدوات المائدة البلاستيكية مرة واحدة، ثم نرميها. البلاستيك لا يتحلل، لذلك يبقى في الأرض لفترة طويلة. يمكن لبعض البلاستيك بعد ذلك أن يصل إلى المحيط. يرغب الكثير من الأشخاص في العثور على فكرة أفضل، وأدوات المائدة التي يمكنك تناولها أصبحت شائعة. يمكن صنع هذا باستخدام أرز خاص أو دقيق، وبعض أدوات المائدة الصالحة للأكل تأتي بنكهات مختلفة أيضًا!

Glow-in-the-dark bike paths

We all know that cycling is a good way to travel – it keeps you fit, and it's good for the environment. In some countries, people are using a new material for bike paths which glows in the dark. It stores solar energy during the day. Then, at night, the path glows softly. Cyclists can see where they are going in the dark. It's safe, and it's good for the environment!

مسارات للدراجات تنير في الظلام

نعلم جميعًا أن ركوب الدراجات وسيلة جيدة للسفر - فهي تحافظ على لياقتك البدنية، كما أنها مفيدة للبيئة. في بعض البلدان، يستخدم الناس مادة جديدة لمسارات الدراجات تتوهج في الظلام. تقوم بتخزين الطاقة الشمسية خلال النهار. ثم، في الليل، يضيء المسار بهدوء. يمكن لراكبي الدراجات رؤية أين يتجهون في الظلام. إنها آمنة، وهي جيدة للبيئة!



Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



Filter straws

When we think of drinking straws, we usually think of drinking something tasty. However, one type of straw solves problems caused by dirty water. A filter straw removes dangerous **bacteria** from water. The bacteria can't pass through the straw. This makes the water safe to drink. In this way, filter straws have **prevented diseases** in many countries, so fewer people are getting sick.

شفاطات الترشيح

عندما نفكر في شفاطات الشرب، فإننا عادة نفكر في شرب شيء لذيذ. ومع ذلك، هناك نوع واحد من الشفاطات يحل المشاكل الناجمة عن المياه القذرة. تعمل شفاطة الترشيح على إزالة البكتيريا الخطيرة من الماء. لا يمكن للبكتيريا أن تمر عبر الشفاطة. وهذا يجعل المياه صالحة للشرب. وبهذه الطريقة، ساعدت شفاطات الترشيح في الوقاية من الأمراض في العديد من البلدان، مما أدى إلى إصابة عدد أقل من الأشخاص بالمرض.

What problems do you think we need to fix on our planet?
Tell me in the comments!

ما هي المشاكل التي تعتقد أننا بحاجة إلى حلها على كوكبنا؟ قل لي في التعليقات!



4 0

Listen and read.



Drinking dirty water can cause disease because dirty water has a lot of bacteria in it. To prevent yourself from becoming sick, wash your hands often and drink clean water. Store fresh food in a refrigerator, or a cool dry place in your kitchen. The food will stay fresh and it won't start to decompose.

شرب المياه القذرة يمكن أن يسبب المرض لأن المياه القذرة تحتوي على الكثير من البكتيريا. لمنع نفسك من الإصابة بالمرض، اغسل يديك كثيرًا واشرب الماء النظيف. قم بتخزين الطعام الطازج في الثلاجة، أو في مكان بارد وجاف في مطبخك. سيبقى الطعام طازجًا ولن يبدأ في التحلل.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

General Activities

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What do you like having? ....
2. What things that are bad for the planet? ....
3. How often do we use plastic cutlery? ....
4. Does plastic decompose? ....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

Cyclists - paths - environment - stores - Doctors

We all know that cycling is a good way to travel – it keeps you fit, and it's good for the 1)................... In some countries, people are using a new material for bike 2)................... which glows in the dark. It 3)................... solar energy during the day. Then, at night, the path glows softly. 4)................... can see where they are going in the dark.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Knives, forks and spoons are kinds of edible ....
   a) cutlery b) flavors c) poultry d) batteries
2. Plastic is very bad for our..............................
   a) market b) planet c) store d) flavors
3. Plastic doesn't .... , so it stays in the ground for a long time.
   a) describe b) continue c) decompose d) stay
4. Some .... cutlery comes in different flavors.
   a) possible b) horrible c) impossible d) edible
5. .... is a good way to travel.
   a) Cycling b) Recycling c) Snorkeling d) Diving
6. Cycling keeps you .... and it's good for the environment.
   a) fat b) fit c) filter d) flat
7. Some materials .... solar energy during the day.
   a) stay b) solve c) store d) glow

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

8. A filter straw removes dangerous .... from water.

a) sharks b) fish c) plants d) bacteria

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. important - are - filter - I think - straws - the most - invention - .

....

2. disease - that - is - Bacteria - something - can - cause - .

....

3. the world - diseases - important - It's - to prevent - around - .

....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

When we think of drinking straws, we usually think of drinking something tasty. However, one type of straw solves problems caused by dirty water. A filter straw removes dangerous bacteria from water. The bacteria can't pass through the straw. This makes the water safe to drink. In this way, filter straws have prevented diseases in many countries, so fewer people are getting sick.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about ....

a) edible cutlery b) filter straws c) water d) diseases

2. The underlined word "tasty" means ....

a) noisy b) delicious c) dirty d) safe

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What can filter straws prevent? ....

4. How does the water become safe? ....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

A great invention

Guiding elements:

(smart phone - chat - researches)

Lesson (2) LANGUAGE

Vocabulary الكلمات

exciting	مثير	science competition	مسابقة علمية
magazine	مجلة	the future	المستقبل
period of time	فترة من الزمن	junk food	طعام غير صحي
Tutankhamun	توت عنخ آمون	time machine	آلة الزمن

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined
invent	يخترع	invented	invented
enter	يدخل	entered	entered
design	يصمم	designed	designed
wonder	يتعجب	wondered	wondered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
build	يبني	built	built
win	يفوز	won	won
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

work in groups	يعمل في مجموعات	make a poster	يقوم بعمل ملصق
let's make ...	هيا نصنع ...	Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة
look like	يشبه - يبدو	competition entry	مشاركة في المسابقة
lose weight	يفقد وزن	win a prize	يفوز بجائزة

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (2)

Listen and read.

What is a time machine?

Ms Samira : OK, today we're going to do something exciting. I want you to imagine that there's a science competition. If you wanted to win a science competition, what would you invent and why? You can work in groups to talk about your ideas, then make a poster about your invention.

حسنًا، اليوم سنفعل شيئًا مثيرًا. أريدكم أن تتخيلوا أن هناك مسابقة علمية. إذا أردتم الفوز بالمسابقة العلمية، ماذا ستخترعون ولماذا؟ يمكنكم العمل في مجموعات للحديث عن أفكاركم، ثم عمل ملصق حول اختراعكم.

Nagwa : Can we look online for ideas?

هل يمكننا البحث عبر الإنترنت عن أفكار؟

Ms Samira : Yes, you can. You can look in magazines, too!

نعم يمكنكم ذلك. يمكنكم البحث في المجلات أيضًا!

Reem, Nagwa, and Lara work in a group.

Reem : Well, if I entered a science competition, I'd design a time machine. I'd love to travel to a different time in history.

حسنًا، إذا شاركت في مسابقة علمية، فسوف أصمم آلة الزمن. أحب السفر إلى زمن مختلف في التاريخ.

Nagwa : That's a great idea. If you designed a time machine, where would you go?

هذه فكرة عظيمة. إذا قمتي بتصميم آلة الزمن، إلى أين ستذهبي؟

Lara : Hmm, that's difficult. I don't know.

حسنًا، هذا صعب. لا أعرف.

Reem : If I went in a time machine, I'd go to Ancient Egypt! I'd like to learn how they built the pyramids.

إذا ذهبت في آلة الزمن، سأذهب إلى مصر القديمة! أود أن أعرف كيف بنوا الأهرامات.

Nagwa	: I wouldn't go to Ancient Egypt if I went in a time machine. I'd go to the future to see what inventions people have!
	لن أذهب إلى مصر القديمة إذا ذهبت في آلة الزمن. سأذهب إلى المستقبل لأرى ما هي الاختراعات التي سيمتلكها الناس!
Lara	: Let's make our competition entry about a time machine, then! If we made a time machine, we could go to so many different places. I think that idea would win the competition!
	فلنجعل مشاركتنا في المسابقة عن آلة الزمن، إذن! إذا صنعنا آلة الزمن، يمكننا الذهاب إلى العديد من الأماكن المختلفة. أعتقد أن هذه الفكرة ستفوز بالمسابقة!
Nagwa	: OK, great. First, let's draw a picture. I wonder what a time machine would look like ...
	حسنًا عظيم. أولًا، دعونا نرسم صورة. أتساءل كيف ستبدو آلة الزمن ...

1 Read the dialog again and match.

1) The teacher asks the class to imagine a) online or in magazines.

2) The children can look for ideas b) the future.

3) Reem would like to go to c) there's a science competition.

4) Nagwa would like to go to d) Ancient Egypt.

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

2 Read the dialog again. Ask and answer.

1. Do the children want to visit the same period of time?

....

2. Are the children going to make a real time machine?

....

 Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Lesson (2)



(if) Second Conditional "إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الثانية

Usage الاستخدام

1) We use it to talk about a situation that is imaginary or unlikely to happen.

نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الثانية للتحدث عن موقف خيالي أو من المحتمل عدم حدوثه.

If + past simple , subject + would / could + inf.

e.g. If I went in a time machine, I'd go to Ancient Egypt.

e.g. If we made a time machine, we could go to so many different places.

Subject + would / could + inf. + if + past simple

e.g. I wouldn't go to Ancient Egypt if I went in a time machine.

e.g. I would go to the future if I went in a time machine.

Note:

1- When the "if" clause is second, we don't use a comma.

عندما تكون جملة الشرط هي الثانية لا نستخدم فاصلة بين الجملتين.

2- 'd = would

Question السؤال

If + past simple , would + subject + inf. ..?

e.g. If you had a lot money, would you buy a phone?

Would + subject + inf. + if + past simple ..?

e.g. Would you buy a phone if you had a lot of money?

Help your child use the second conditional.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم الحالة الشرطية الثانية.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If you .... to win a competition, you'd work hard.
   a) want b) wants c) wanted d) wanting
2. If I entered a science competition, I .... design a time machine.
   a) will b) would c) can d) may
3. If you .... a time machine, where would you go?
   a) designed b) design c) will design d) designs
4. If I went in a time machine, I .... go to Ancient Egypt.
   a) have b) will c) can d) would
5. If she .... a lot of money, she'd buy a new car.
   a) have b) has c) had d) having
6. I .... go to Ancient Egypt if I went in a time machine.
   a) don't b) wouldn't c) am not d) haven't
7. What .... you do if you found a treasure?
   a) could b) can c) will d) are
8. If he .... first, he'd be happy.
   a) come b) comes c) came d) coming

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. If he .... (win) the race, I'd be happy.
2. .... (Will) you come to the party if I invited you?
3. What would you .... (did) if you won a gold medal?
4. If she .... (has) free time, she'd visit me.
5. If you .... (get) up early, you could catch the bus.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

invitation - ideas - invention - poster - machine

Samira : Today we're going to do something exciting?

Nagwa : What is it?

Samira : We're going to make a 1) ....

Nagwa : What is it about?

Samira : It's about an 2) ....

Nagwa : Can we look online for 3) ....?

Samira : Yes, and you can choose an invention.

Nagwa : Well. I think it's a good idea to make a time 4) ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If I entered a science competition, I .... a robot to clean my room
   a) would design b) designed c) can design d) designs
2. Asser wouldn't use a magazine if he ..... to find ideas for a competitior
   a) wants b) want c) wanted d) will want
3. Would you go to Ancient Egypt if you .... a time
   a) have b) has c) having d) had
4. If we .... enter the competition, we wouldn't win a pri
   a) didn't b) haven't c) don't d) wouldn't
5. If I .... eating junk food, I would lose some weig
   a) stop b) would stop c) stops d) stopped

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. ideas - can - **The children** - look for - online - .
   ....
2. you go - **If** - in - you traveled - where - would - machine - a time - ?
   ....
3. machine - a time - the children - **Are** - going to - make - ?
   ....

Lesson (3) IT LOOKS LIKE A FISH!

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

an angelfish	السمكة القمرية	a sea turtle	سلحفاة بحرية
a coral reef	شعاب مرجانية	smooth	أملس
clicks	أصوات طقطقة	waterproof	مقاوم للمياه
sea life	الحياة البحرية	pops	صوت فرقعة

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

important	هام	interviewer	مُحاور
mouse	فأر	healthy	صحي
camera	كاميرا	scientist	عالم
film	يصور	photograph	يصور - صورة
wildlife	حياة برية	material	مادة "خام"
take photos	يأخذ صور	scare	يخيف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
take	يأخذ	took	taken
have / has	يملك	had	had
show	يوضح	showed	shown
feel	يشعر	felt	felt

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

covered in	مغطى بـ	take photos	يلتقط صوزا
a real fish	سمكة حقيقية	type of	نوع من
scared of	خائف من	different from	مختلف عن
feel like	يبدو ملمسه مثل ...	swim across	يسبح عبر
people with cats	أناس يملكون قطط	a special camera	كاميرا خاصة

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (3)

Study the following sentences

1. The coral reef shows how healthy the water is. تظهر الشعاب المرجانية كم أن المياه صحية.
2. The invention is blue and yellow. الاختراع ذو لون أزرق وأصفر.
3. It's covered in smooth material. إنه مغطى بمادة لينة.
4. It makes clicks and pops. تصدر أصوات طقطقة و أصوات فرقعة.

Note:

تستخدم التعبيرات التالية عندما تقول أن شيئًا ما شبيه بشيء آخر أو مختلف عنه.

look like	يشبه	feels like	ملمسه مثل	sounds like	يبدو مثل
smells like	رائحته مثل	tastes like	مذاقه مثل		
similar to	مشابه لـ	different from	مختلف عن		

e.g. The fish camera **looks like** a fish. تبدو الكاميرا مثل السمكة.

It **feels like** silk. ملمسها مثل الحرير.

It **sounds like** a plant. يبدو مثل النبات.

It **smells like** smoke. رائحته مثل الدخان.

It **tastes like** honey. مذاقه مثل العسل.

Listen and read.



Dr Amin is a scientist who has invented a special camera. The camera can take photos under the water. It's called Fish Camera because it looks like a real angelfish. It doesn't scare the fish and other sea life. It feels like a fish because it's covered in smooth, waterproof material. And it sounds like a fish because it makes noises like them. It clicks and pops! Fish Camera can show scientists how healthy the coral reefs are.

الدكتور أمين عالم اخترع كاميرا خاصة. يمكن للكاميرا التقاط الصور تحت الماء. يطلق عليها اسم كاميرا السمكة لأنها تبدو مثل سمكة ملائكية حقيقية. أنها لا تخيف الأسماك والحياة البحرية الأخرى. يبدو الأمر وكأنه سمكة لأنه مغطى بمادة ناعمة مقاومة للماء. وصوتها مثل السمكة لأنها تصدر أصواتًا نقير وفرقعة مثلها! يمكن لكاميرا الأسماك أن توضح للعلماء مدى صحة الشعاب المرجانية.

General Activities

1 **Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box.**

reefs - sea - did - dive - best

Omar : How are you, Islam?
Islam : I'm fine, thank you.
Omar : Where 1) .... you go last holiday
Islam : I went to Sharm El-Sheikh.
Omar : Did you 2) .... in the sea
Islam : Yes, I did.
Omar : What did you like 3) ....
Islam : I liked the amazing coral 4) ....

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.**

1. The coral reef shows how .... the water
   a) bad b) healthy c) unhealthy d) dirty
2. The .... is blue and yello
   a) invent b) invertor c) invention d) invents
3. It is .... in smooth mate
   a) cover b) covers c) covering d) covered
4. It makes clicks and ....
   a) pops b) clocks c) watches d) cups
5. Where does the camera .... photo
   a) make b) take c) talk d) invent
6. What type of fish does the camera look ....
   a) feel b) hate c) love d) like
7. The camera .... like a real fis
   a) sounds b) tastes c) smells d) takes
8. The camera .... like a fish. It's smoo
   a) tastes b) feels c) looks d) makes

Help your child deal with such questions.
...ـك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (4) THE SCIENCE MUSEUM

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

driverless	ذاتي القيادة - بدون سائق	interactive	تفاعلي
control	يتحكم في	planetarium	القبة السماوية (مرصد فلكي)

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

amazement	دهشة	exhibition	معرض	driver	سائق
prefer	يفضل	underwater	تحت الماء	guide	مرشد
robots	روبوتات	notice	يلاحظ	curious	فضولي

Definitions تعريفات

driverless	something without a driver	ذاتي القيادة - بدون سائق
interactive	something you can touch and move	تفاعلي
planetarium	a place where you can see stars and planets	القبة السماوية
control	to direct something or somebody	يتحكم في

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
smile	يبتسم	smiled	smiled
follow	يتبع	followed	followed
fly	يطير	flew	flown
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

school trip	رحلة مدرسية	the science museum	متحف العلوم
on the bus	في الأتوبيس	do a school project	يقوم بمشروع دراسي
on the way	في الطريق	fly high up	يطير لأعلى
show them around	يتجول بهم	everyday life	الحياة اليومية
It sounds amazing!	يبدوا مذهلًا!	filled with stars	مملوء بالنجوم
This is awesome!	هذا مذهل!	flying car	السيارة الطائرة

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

Mazen, Fares, and Wael were excited. It was the day of the school trip to the science museum, and they couldn't wait. They all got on the bus.

كان مازن وفارس ووائل متحمسين. كان ذلك يوم الرحلة المدرسية إلى متحف العلوم، ولم يطيقوا الانتظار. لقد صعدوا جميعًا إلى الحافلة.

"OK, children," said Ms Amal, "there's an exhibition about **driverless** cars at the museum, and we're going to do a school project about it. Driverless cars don't need a driver to **control** them. The project question is: Where would you go if you had a car that could go anywhere? I want you all to think of your best ideas!"

قالت السيدة أمل: "حسناً يا أطفال، هناك معرض حول السيارات ذاتية القيادة في المتحف، وسنقوم بعمل مشروع مدرسي حول هذا الموضوع. السيارات ذاتية القيادة لا تحتاج إلى سائق للتحكم بها. سؤال المشروع هو: إلى أين ستذهب إذا كان لديك سيارة يمكنها الذهاب إلى أي مكان؟ أريدكم جميعًا أن تفكروا في أفضل أفكاركم!

The children chatted on the way. "That's easy," said Wael, "I'd fly high up in the sky, and look down at everything!"
Fares said, "I'd prefer to go underwater, to see the animals that live in the sea."
Mazen was quiet. He thought if he could go anywhere, he wouldn't go up in the sky, or underwater. Where would he go?

تحدث الأطفال في الطريق. قال وائل: "هذا سهل، سأطير عالياً في السماء وأنظر للأسفل إلى كل شيء!" وقال فارس: "أفضل النزول تحت الماء، لرؤية الحيوانات التي تعيش في البحر".

كان مازن هادئًا. لقد اعتقد أنه إذا كان بإمكانه الذهاب إلى أي مكان، فلن يصعد إلى السماء أو تحت الماء. أين سيذهب؟

The science museum was amazing. Mazen, Fares, and Wael were in a group with six other students, and a guide called Mr Kamal. He showed them around and answered lots of questions. Mazen listened as he thought about the project.

كان متحف العلوم مذهلاً. كان مازن وفارس ووائل ضمن مجموعة تضم ستة طلاب آخرين ومرشدًا يُدعى السيد كمال. لقد تجول بهم وأجاب عن الكثير من الأسئلة. استمع مازن وهو يفكر في المشروع.

First, the children went to an **interactive** exhibition about robots. There were lots of experiments to try there. Then they got to the exhibition about driverless cars.

في البداية، ذهب الأطفال إلى معرض تفاعلي حول الروبوتات. كان هناك الكثير من التجارب التي يمكنك تجربتها هناك. ثم وصلوا إلى معرض السيارات ذاتية القيادة.

"I know there are some driverless cars now," said Mr Kamal, "but this one is special. We can't use it in everyday life yet, but in the future, this car will be

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

able to fly and swim," he said.

قال السيد كمال: "أعلم أن هناك بعض السيارات ذاتية القيادة الآن، لكن هذه السيارة مميزة. لا يمكننا استخدامها في الحياة اليومية بعد، ولكن في المستقبل، ستكون هذه السيارة قادرة على الطيران والسباحة".

"So, I could go into the air!" said Wael. "And I could go under the water," said Fares. "It sounds amazing," said Mazen. But he still didn't know where he would go.

قال وائل "إذن، يمكنني أن انطلق في الهواء!". قال فارس: "ويمكنني النزول تحت الماء". قال مازن: "يبدو الأمر مذهلاً". لكنه ما زال لا يعرف إلى أين سيذهب.

The other students looked at the car and talked about what it could do. Mazen noticed a large door in the exhibition room. He was curious. Mazen spoke to Mr Kamal. "Excuse me, what's through that door?" he asked.

نظر الطلاب الآخرون إلى السيارة وتحدثوا عما يمكن أن تفعله. لاحظ مازن وجود باب كبير في غرفة المعرض. لقد كان فضولياً. تحدث مازن مع السيد كمال وسأله. "عذرًا، ماذا يوجد خلال هذا الباب؟".

Mr Kamal smiled. "That's the planetarium. Have you ever been inside a **planetarium**?" "No," said Mazen. Mr Kamal looked at his watch. "We have time. Let's all go and see!" he said.

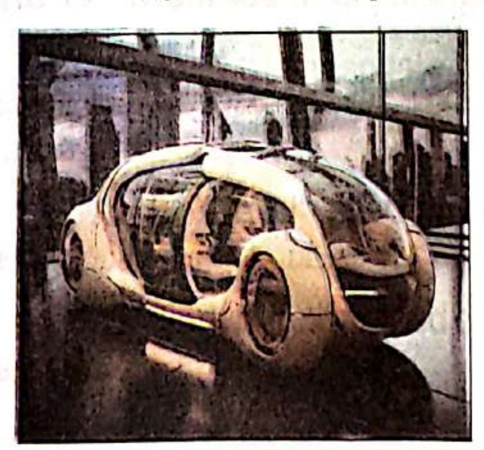
ابتسم السيد كمال. "هذه هي القبة السماوية. هل سبق لك أن دخلت في داخل القبة السماوية؟" قال مازن: «لا». نظر السيد كمال إلى ساعته وقال "لدينا الوقت. دعونا نذهب جميعا ونرى!".

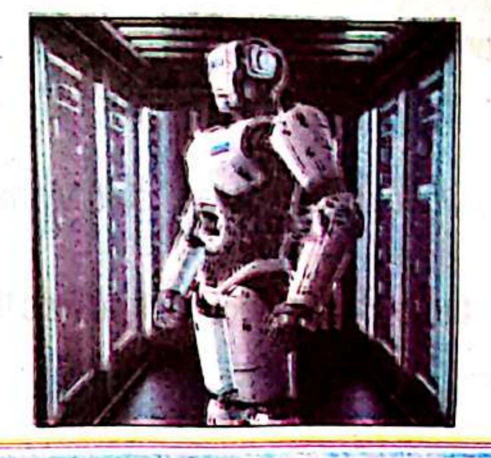
He opened the door, and Mazen and the other students followed him inside. They saw a dark room, filled with stars. Everybody looked in amazement as they saw stars and planets high above them.

فتح الباب، وتبعه مازن والطلاب الآخرون إلى الداخل. رأوا غرفة مظلمة مليئة بالنجوم. بدا الجميع مندهشين عندما رأوا النجوم والكواكب عاليا فوقهم.

"This is awesome!" said Mazen. "Now I know where I'd go. I'd go into space if I had a driverless flying car!"

قال مازن "هذا رائع!". "الآن أعرف إلى أين سأذهب. سأذهب إلى الفضاء لو كان لدي سيارة طائرة بدون سائق!"





Listen and read.

A trip to the Science Museum



Ms Amal spoke to the class.

تحدثت السيدة أمل إلى الفصل.

"Hello, children. I hope you enjoyed the school trip to the science museum yesterday. I'd like you to talk about your ideas in different groups. Then I want you to choose one idea that is your favorite."

مرحبا يا أطفال. أتمنى أن تكونوا قد استمتعتم بالرحلة المدرسية إلى متحف العلوم أمس. أود منكم أن تتحدثوا عن أفكاركم في مجموعات مختلفة. ثم أريدكم أن تختاروا فكرة واحدة هي المفضلة لديكم.

Mona, Dalia, and Fareeda were in a group together.

كانت منى وداليا وفريدة في مجموعة معًا.

"Mona, where would you go if you had a car that could go anywhere?" asked Fareeda.

سألت فريدة: "منى، أين ستذهبين إذا كان لديك سيارة يمكن أن تذهب إلى أي مكان؟".

"I'd go to the top of Mount Sinai. I use a wheelchair, so I can't hike up a mountain. If I flew to the top of the mountain, it would be amazing."

"سأذهب إلى قمة جبل سيناء. أستخدم كرسيًا متحركًا، لذا لا أستطيع صعود الجبل. إذا طرت إلى قمة الجبل، سيكون الأمر مذهلاً."

"That's a great idea, Mona," said Dalia. "If I went anywhere, I'd fly over the Nile. I'd see crocodiles and other wildlife."

قالت داليا: "إنها فكرة رائعة يا منى". "إذا ذهبت إلى أي مكان، كنت سأطير فوق النيل وسأرى التماسيح وغيرها من الحيوانات البرية."

"That sounds a lot of fun," said Mona. "What about you, Fareeda?"

قالت منى: "يبدو هذا ممتعاً للغاية". "وماذا عنك يا فريدة؟"

"I'd go under the water in the Red Sea. If I went under the water, I'd see lots of different sea life. I'd see turtles swimming under the water and lots of colorful fish."

"سأذهب تحت الماء في البحر الأحمر. إذا ذهبت تحت الماء، سأرى الكثير من الحياة البحرية المختلفة. سأرى السلاحف تسبح تحت الماء والكثير من الأسماك الملونة".

"Wow! We'd like that too," said Mona and Dalia. "Let's do that!"

قالت منى وداليا: "رائع! نريد ذلك أيضًا". "لنقم بذلك!"

The three friends decided that was the best choice in their group.

قرر الأصدقاء الثلاثة أن هذا هو الخيار الأفضل في مجموعتهم.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Why were Mazen, Fares and Wael excited?

....

2. Where was the trip to?

....

3. How did they go there?

....

4. What is the exhibition about?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

moon - underwater - control - sky - quiet

Driverless cars are amazing. They don't need a driver to 1) .... them. Mazen, Fares and Wael were excited about these cars. Wael would fly high up in the 2) .... Fares would go 3) .... to see animals that live in the sea. Mazen was 4) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... means something without a driver.
   a) Planetarium b) Interactive c) Driverless d) Control
2. .... means something you can touch and move.
   a) Active b) Passive c) Project d) Interactive
3. We can see stars and planets at the ....
   a) planetarium b) hospital c) planet d) stadium
4. To .... means to direct something or somebody.
   a) drive b) control c) dive d) follow
5. Ali wants to fly into ....
   a) spice b) space c) speed d) straw
6. Where does Mazen decide to go in a driverless .... car?
   a) fly b) flew c) flies d) flying

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Mazen, Fares, and Wael were excited. It was the day of the sch... trip to the science museum. They went there by bus. There was ... exhibition about driverless cars. They chatted about all the way to the science museum. It was amazing. The friends were in a group with ... other students and a guide called Mr Kamal. He showed them around a... answered lots of questions. First, the children went to an interactive exhibition about robots. Then they got to the exhibition about driverle... cars. It was a wonderful trip. They enjoyed their time very much.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The friends went to the science museum by ....

   a) car b) bus c) train d) plane

2. The underlined word "driverless" means something without a ....

   a) guide b) teacher c) driver d) diver

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did the guide do? ....
4. How was the trip? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. project - is - What - the school - about - ?

....

2. planets - They - inside - went - to see - the planetarium - .

....

3. a driver - them - Driverless - don't - cars - need - to control - .

....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

A visit to the science museum

Guiding elements:

(driverless cars - exhibition - planetarium)

Help your child deal with such questions.

...ساعدته أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (5) LANGUAGE

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

exist	يوجد	mint	نعناع	plow	محراث
toothpaste	معجون أسنان	paste	معجون	engines	محركات
pain	ألم	ink	حبر		

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

sign	علامة	metal	معدني	paper	ورق
ideas	افكار	machines	آلات	papyrus	ورق بردي
medicine	دواء	tools	أدوات	thick	سميك
human body	جسم الإنسان	difficult	صعب	reeds	نبات القصب
herbs	اعشاب	salt	ملح	oil	زيت
teeth	أسنان	pepper	فلفل	soil	تربة زراعية
events	أحداث	decisions	قرارات	clever	ماهر / ذكي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
mix	يخلط	mixed	mixed
record	يسجل	recorded	recorded
communicate	يتواصل	communicated	communicated
create	يبتكر	created	created
burn	يحرق	burned / burnt	burned / burnt
turn	يحول / يقلب	turned	turned
pull	يسحب / يجر	pulled	pulled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept
tell	يخبر	told	told
dig	يحفر	dug	dug

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

our modern world	عالمنا المعاصر	interested in	مهتم بـ
full of	مملوء بـ	keep clean	يحافظ على نظافة
good at	جيد في	a type of	نوع من
for thousands of years	لآلاف السنين	write down	يدون
come from	يأتي من	made from	مصنوع من

Listen and read.

What did the Ancient Egyptians invent? by Injy

We think our modern world is full of exciting new inventions. However, the Ancient Egyptians were as good as modern people at inventing new things. We still use many Ancient Egyptian inventions today. They've **existed** for thousands of years. That's the sign of a good invention!
For example, many ideas that are still important in modern medicine come from these times. Ancient Egyptians were as interested in health and medicine as we are. They understood how the human body worked, and used herbs to stop **pain** and diseases.

نعتقد أن عالمنا الحديث مليء بالاختراعات الجديدة والمثيرة. ومع ذلك، كان المصريون القدماء جيدين مثل الأشخاص المعاصرين في اختراع أشياء جديدة. وما زلنا نستخدم العديد من الاختراعات المصرية القديمة حتى يومنا هذا. لقد كانت موجودة منذ آلاف السنين. وهذا علامة على اختراع جيد!

على سبيل المثال، العديد من الأفكار التي لا تزال مهمة في الطب الحديث تأتي من هذه العصور. كان المصريون القدماء مهتمين بالصحة والطب مثلنا تمامًا. لقد فهموا كيفية عمل جسم الإنسان، واستخدموا الأعشاب لوقف الألم والأمراض.

A) Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep clean. Clean teeth were important to them, so they invented a type of **toothpaste**. The Ancient Egyptians mixed salt, flowers, **mint**, and pepper into a **paste**. Ancient Egyptian toothpaste was as almost as good as modern toothpaste!

أراد المصريون القدماء الحفاظ على النظافة. وكانت الأسنان النظيفة مهمة بالنسبة لهم، لذلك اخترعوا نوعاً من معجون الأسنان. خلط المصريون القدماء الملح والزهور والنعناع والفلفل في عجينة. كان معجون الأسنان المصري القديم بنفس جودة معجون الأسنان الحديث!

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

B) In Ancient Egypt, it was important to write down decisions, record events, and tell stories. For this, people needed paper and **ink**. Papyrus was a type of thick paper made from reeds. It wasn't as smooth as the paper we use today, but it changed how people communicated. The Ancient Egyptians also created an early type of ink. They burned wood or oil, and mixed it with water. Then they used the ink to write on the papyrus.

في مصر القديمة، كان من المهم تدوين القرارات، وتسجيل الأحداث، وسرد القصص. ولهذا، احتاج الناس إلى الورق والحبر. كان ورق البردي نوعًا من الورق السميك المصنوع من القصب. لم يكن أملسًا مثل الورق الذي نستخدمه اليوم، لكنه غير طريقة تواصل الناس. كما ابتكر المصريون القدماء نوعًا مبكرًا من الحبر. كانوا يحرقون الحطب أو الزيت ويخلطونه بالماء. ثم استخدموا الحبر للكتابة على ورق البردي.

C) The Ancient Egyptians were one of the first groups of people to use a metal **plow**. A plow was used to dig and turn the soil. Later, they used animals to pull this plow. This made plowing the land easier, but it wasn't as easy as it is today. Now, farmers use machines with **engines** to move their plows.

كان المصريون القدماء من أوائل الناس الذين استخدموا المحراث المعدني. تم استخدام المحراث لحفر التربة وتقليبها. وفي وقت لاحق، استخدموا الحيوانات لسحب هذا المحراث. وهذا ما جعل حرث الأرض أسهل، لكنه لم يكن سهلاً كما هو اليوم. أما الآن، فيستخدم المزارعون آلات ذات محركات لتحريك محاريثهم.



as + adjective + as

- **We use as + adjective + as to compare. The affirmative form means that the two things we are comparing the same in some way.**

نستخدم (as + adjective + as) عند المقارنة. ويفيد هذا التركيب في حالة الأثبات التشابه والتماثل في أمر ما بين شيئين.

e.g. Ancient Egyptian toothpaste was almost as good as modern toothpaste!

بمعنى أن معجون الأسنان في مصر القديمة كان جيدًا تقريبًا مثل معجون الأسنان الحديث.

not as + adjective + as

- **The negative form means that the two things are different.**

أما في صيغة النفي فمعناه أن الشيئين مختلفان.

e.g. Traveling wasn't as easy as it is today.

لم يكن السفر سهلًا مثل اليوم.

بمعنى أن السفر كان صعبًا، لكنه الآن أسهل.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The inventions in the past were .... exciting as they are today.
   a) as b) is c) so d) than
2. The Ancient Egyptians were as .... as modern people at inventing new things.
   a) better b) good c) best d) the best
3. Ancient Egyptians were as .... in health as we are.
   a) interest b) interests c) interesting d) interested
4. Ancient Egyptians toothpaste was as good .... modern toothpaste.
   a) so b) such c) as d) is
5. Papyrus wasn't as .... the paper we use today.
   a) smooth b) smoother c) smooth as d) smoothest
6. Plowing the land wasn't as .... as it is today.
   a) the easiest b) easier c) easiest d) easy
7. Omar is as clever .... his brother.
   a) so b) than c) then d) as
8. Ink is .... paper.
   a) not useful as b) as useful as c) so useful as d) useful

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Amir is .... (so) tall as Nabil.
2. Osama isn't as .... (shorter) as Ahmad.
3. Is the tiger as .... (more dangerous) as the lion?
4. My book isn't as .... (newer) as my brother's book.
5. I'm as happy .... (then) my friends.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What's the modern world full of?

....

2. Who were good at inventing new things?

....

3. For how long are the ancient Egyptians' inventions existed?

....

4. Do we use ancient Egyptians' inventions today?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

healthy - pain - medicine - useful - health

The Ancient Egyptians were great people. They invented many 1)........................ things. Many of their ideas that are still important in modern 2)........................ come from these times. Ancient Egyptians were as interested in 3)........................and medicine as we are. They understood how the human body worked, and used herbs to stop 4)........................ and diseases.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ancient Egyptians were .... interested in health as we are.
   a) so b) very c) than d) as
2. Papyrus wasn't as .... as the paper we use today.
   a) softer b) smooth c) faster d) quieter
3. I think ink is as .... as paper.
   a) the most useful b) useful c) most useful d) more useful
4. Toothpaste isn't as .... as herbs.
   a) the oldest b) oldest c) older d) old
5. Ancient Egyptians were as clever .... today's inventors.
   a) as b) so c) such d) than

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In Ancient Egypt, it was important to write down decisions, record events, and tell stories. For this, people needed paper and ink. Papyrus was a type of thick paper made from reeds. It wasn't as smooth as the paper we use today, but it changed how people communicated. The Ancient Egyptians also created an early type of ink. They burned wood or oil, and mixed it with water. Then they used the ink to write on the papyrus.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. To write down decisions people needed .... and ink.
   a) paper b) pepper c) plastic d) wood
2. The underlined word "ink" means something to .... with.
   a) play b) work c) read d) write

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What was papyrus? ....
4. How did the Ancient Egyptians create the early ink? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. the past - difficult - Farming - was - very - in - .

   ....

2. metal - understood - Egyptians - plows - Ancient - how - worked - .

   ....

3. Egyptians - kind of - Ancient - ink - a new - invented - .

   ....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Ancient Egyptian inventions

Guiding elements:

(toothpaste - ink - plow)

....

....

Lesson (6) WRITING: A SOLUTION TO A PROBLEM

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

solution	حل	effect	تأثير	chips	رقائق / مقرمشات
problem	مشكلة	trap	مصيدة / فخ	recycle	يعيد استخدام

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

plastic	بلاستيك	safer	أكثر أمنًا	reasons	أسباب
plastic pollution	تلوث بلاستيكي	sick	مريض	pollution	تلوث
Ocean Net	شبكة المحيط	environment	بيئة	trash	قمامة
seabin	جهاز تنقية المياه	invention	اختراع	straw	قش

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
create	يخلق / يبتكر / يسبب	created	created
stop	يتوقف	stopped	stopped
sort	يصنف / يفرز	sorted	sorted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
hurt	يؤذي	hurt	hurt
catch	يمسك / يصطاد	caught	caught

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get into	يصل إلى	wash onto beaches	يصل إلى الشواطئ
bad for	ضار لـ	get trapped	محاصر / محتجز
good for	جيد لـ	make up	تكوين من

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Listen and read.



NEWS

We use plastic in our everyday lives: at home, at school, and at work. Plastic can get into the ocean and create lots of problems. It can have a very bad **effect** on sea life: turtles, fish, and jellyfish, for example. Some animals think the plastic is food, and so they eat it and become sick. Some animals get **trapped** in the plastic and are hurt.
Plastic in our water is also bad for the environment. A lot of plastic pollution is washed onto beaches, which looks horrible. If there wasn't so much plastic pollution, the seas and beaches would be safer for the sea animals and for us, too.

نحن نستخدم البلاستيك في حياتنا اليومية: في المنزل، في المدرسة، وفي العمل. يمكن أن يصل البلاستيك إلى المحيط ويسبب الكثير من المشاكل. يمكن أن يكون له تأثير سيء للغاية على الحياة البحرية: السلاحف والأسماك وقناديل البحر، على سبيل المثال. تعتقد بعض الحيوانات أن البلاستيك طعام، فتأكله وتمرض. بعض الحيوانات تحاصر في البلاستيك وتتأذي.
البلاستيك الموجود في مياهنا ضار بالبيئة أيضًا. يتم نقل الكثير من التلوث البلاستيكي إلى الشواطئ، الأمر الذي يبدو فظيعًا. لو لم يكن هناك الكثير من التلوث البلاستيكي، لكانت البحار والشواطئ أكثر أمانًا للحيوانات البحرية ولنا أيضًا.

The Ocean Net is a special invention that catches trash in the sea. It is a great solution to the problem of plastic in the oceans. This is for a number of reasons. Firstly, it helps sea life. It stops plastic from getting into the sea so that animals, fish, and sea birds are not hurt.



The Ocean Net

تعد شبكة المحيط اختراعًا خاصًا يلتقط القمامة في البحر. إنه حل رائع لمشكلة البلاستيك في المحيطات. هذا لعدد من الأسباب. أولاً، فهو يساعد الحياة البحرية. يمنع دخول البلاستيك إلى البحر حتى لا تتأذى الحيوانات والأسماك والطيور البحرية.

Secondly, it's also good for the environment. It catches plastic objects: drink bottles, **chip** bags, and plastic straws. These plastic objects can then be sorted and **recycled**. This means that we use less plastic.
As you can see, the Ocean Net is a great invention!

ثانيًا، إنه مفيد للبيئة أيضًا. فهو يلتقط الأشياء البلاستيكية: زجاجات الشرب، وأكياس الرقائق، والمصاصات البلاستيكية. ويمكن بعد ذلك فرز هذه الأشياء البلاستيكية وإعادة تدويرها. وهذا يعني أننا نستخدم كميات أقل من البلاستيك.
وكما ترون، فإن شبكة المحيط اختراع عظيم!

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Lesson (6)



When you write a solution to a problem, you need to include reasons.

عندما تكتب حلاً لمشكلة ما، عليك أن تذكر الأسباب.

Your reasons show the reader why your solution is a good one.

توضح أسبابك للقارئ سبب كون الحل الذي تقدمه جيدًا.

Introduce your reasons with Firstly, Secondly, etc.

اذكر أسبابك مستخدمًا الكلمات أولاً وثانيًا، الخ.

Other phrases you can use are: it helps, it stops, it's good for...

العبارات الأخرى التي يمكنك استخدامها هي: إنه يساعد، إنه يمنع، إنه مفيد لـ ...

A seabin


A Seabin

The seabin is an interesting solution that catches trash in the sea. It's made up of a filter, pump, and bucket. Firstly, it helps remove many things from the ocean, for example, plastic, paper, and cardboard. Secondly, it can remove fuel and oil from the water. Finally, it's good for making the water cleaner and safer for sea life.

Listen and read.

Problem


Special floor tiles

Many countries still make electricity using fossil fuels like coal, oil, and gas. Burning fossil fuels creates carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases, like methane. However, greenhouse gases are bad for the environment. High levels of greenhouse gases like carbon dioxide cause climate change and air pollution.

لا تزال العديد من البلدان تنتج الكهرباء باستخدام الوقود الحفري مثل الفحم والنفط والغاز. يؤدي حرق الوقود الحفري إلى توليد ثاني أكسيد الكربون والغازات الدفيئة الأخرى، مثل الميثان. ومع ذلك، فإن الغازات الدفيئة ضارة بالبيئة. تتسبب المستويات العالية من الغازات الدفيئة مثل ثاني أكسيد الكربون في تغير المناخ وتلوث الهواء.

Solution

A company has created special floor tiles which create energy when people walk on them. The energy is turned into electricity and stored. Now the tiles are used in 36 countries around the world to create energy in different places: on train platforms, and in places where people play football. As a result, the energy is clean, it's interactive, and it's fun to create!

قامت إحدى الشركات بإنشاء بلاطات خاصة للأرضيات تولد الطاقة عندما يمشي الناس عليها. يتم تحويل الطاقة إلى كهرباء وتخزينها. يتم الآن استخدام البلاط في ٣٦ دولة حول العالم لتوليد الطاقة في أماكن مختلفة: على منصات القطارات، وفي الأماكن التي يلعب فيها الناس كرة القدم. ونتيجة لذلك، تصبح الطاقة نظيفة، وتفاعلية، ومن الممتع انتجاها!

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Listen and read.

A solution to a problem

Problem



Many countries still make electricity using fossil fuels like coal, oil, and gas. Burning fossil fuels creates carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases, like methane. However, greenhouse gases are bad for the environment. High levels of greenhouse gases like carbon dioxide cause climate change and air pollution.

لاتزال العديد من البلدان تنتج الكهرباء باستخدام الوقود الحفري مثل الفحم والنفط والغاز. يؤدي حرق الوقود الحفري إلى توليد ثاني أكسيد الكربون والغازات الدفينة الأخرى، مثل الميثان. ومع ذلك، فإن الغازات الدفينة ضارة بالبيئة. تتسبب المستويات العالية من الغازات الدفينة مثل ثاني أكسيد الكربون في تغير المناخ وتلوث الهواء.

Solution

A company has created special floor tiles which create energy when people walk on them. The energy is turned into electricity and stored. Now the tiles are used in 36 countries around the world to create energy in different places: on train platforms, and in places where people play football. As a result, the energy is clean, it's interactive, and it's fun to create!

قامت إحدى الشركات بإنشاء بلاطات خاصة للأرضيات تولد الطاقة عندما بمشي الناس عليها. يتم تحويل الطاقة إلى كهرباء وتخزينها. يتم الآن استخدام البلاط في 36 دولة حول العالم لتوليد الطاقة في أماكن مختلفة: على أرصفة القطارات، وفي الأماكن التي يلعب فيها الناس كرة القدم. ونتيجة لذلك، تصبح الطاقة نظيفة، وتفاعلية، ومن الممتع صنعها!

Read again and answer.

1. What does burning fossil fuels create?

....

2. Where are the tiles used now? Why?

....

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where do you use plastic?

....

2. What can plastic create?

....

3. What animals can be affected by plastic?

....

4. What happens to animals when they get trapped in the plastic?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

beaches - net - stops - recycled - trapped

Plastic in our oceans is bad because animals sometimes eat the plastic or get 1)...................... in it. It also causes pollution on 2)...................... The Ocean Net is good because it 3)............................ plastic from getting into the sea. The plastic in the net can be sorted and 4)............................

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I think I'm suffering from the .... of too little sleep.
   a) effect b) help c) stop d) sort
2. The rat got its foot caught in a ....
   a) tap b) map c) trap d) cop
3. We must .... plastic and paper.
   a) recycle b) eat c) throw d) play
4. I .... my back when I fell off the horse.
   a) took b) saw c) hurt d) made
5. The seabin is made .... of a filter, pump, and bucket.
   a) of b) in c) up d) at



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

The Ocean Net is a special invention that catches trash in the sea. It is a great solution to the problem of plastic in the oceans. This is for a number of reasons. Firstly, it helps sea life. It stops plastic from getting into the sea so that animals, fish, and sea birds are not hurt. Secondly, it's also good for the environment. It catches plastic objects: drink bottles, chip bags, and plastic straws. These plastic objects can then be sorted and recycled. This means that we use less plastic. As you can see, the Ocean Net is a great invention!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about "the ....".
   a) seabin b) Ocean Net c) plastic d) fish
2. The underlined word "recycle" means ....
   a) rewrite b) reuse c) replace d) replay

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why is the Ocean Net important? ....
4. How does the Ocean Net help sea life? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. use - in - We - plastic - everyday - lives - our - .

....

2. is - The seabin - a - solution - great - .

....

3. bad - is - Plastic - for - environment - the - .

....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

The Ocean Net

Guiding elements:

(invention - trash - stop)

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية



birdfeeder
وعاء تغذية الطيور



birdseed
طعام الطيور



clothes pins
مشابك ملابس



gatepost
عمود / سارية البوابة



knot
عقدة



loop
حلقة / دائرة



rope
حبل

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

yard	فناء	difficult	صعب	branch	فرع
neighbor	جار	ideas	أفكار	attach	يربط
slowly	ببطء	sink	حوض	metal gate	بوابة معدنية
stick	عصا	next door	البيت المجاور	pull	يسحب
below	أسفل	top	أعلى	rest	يستريح

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look out of	ينظر من	for a while	لفترة من الوقت
decide to	يقرر أن	one end of	طرف
pick up	يلتقط	high up	عاليًا
able to	قادر على	close to	قريب من

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

Feeding the birds

إطعام الطيور



One morning, Rania was in her yard. She could hear her neighbor, Mr Hamdy. Every morning, he went outside and filled his **birdfeeders**. Then he sat on a chair and watched the birds.

في صباح أحد الأيام، كانت رانيا في فناء منزلها. كانت تسمع صوت جارها السيد حمدي. كان يخرج كل صباح ويملأ أوعية تغذية الطيور الخاصة به. ثم يجلس على كرسي ويراقب الطيور.

But that day, something was different. He was outside, but it sounded like he was walking slowly.
Rania went and asked her mom, "Is Mr Hamdy OK? He isn't feeding the birds."

لكن في ذلك اليوم، كان هناك شيء مختلف. لقد كان بالخارج، ولكن بدا وكأنه كان يمشي ببطء. ذهبت رانيا وسألت والدتها: هل السيد حمدي بخير؟ إنه لا يطعم الطيور."

"Mr Hamdy hurt his leg," said Mom. "He's OK, but he needs to walk with a stick. I think it's difficult for him to fill his birdfeeders. I'm making some koshari for his lunch. Can you take it to him later?"

قالت الأم: "السيد حمدي أصيب في ساقه "إنه بخير، لكنه يحتاج إلى المشي بالعصا. أعتقد أنه من الصعب عليه ملء أوعية تغذية الطيور الخاصة به. أقوم بإعداد بعض الكشري لغداءه. هل يمكنك أن تأخذيه إليه لاحقًا؟"

"Of course," said Rania. She thought about Mr Hamdy. He loved feeding the birds, and she was sad that he couldn't. Rania looked out of the window. She decided to help Mr Hamdy. She got some pencils and paper, and sat down at her desk to draw her ideas.

قالت رانيا: "بالطبع". فكرت في السيد حمدي. كان يحب إطعام الطيور، وكانت حزينة لأنّه لم يستطع ذلك. نظرت رانيا من النافذة. قررت مساعدة السيد حمدي. أحضرت بعض الأقلام والأوراق، وجلست على مكتبها لترسم أفكارها.

A few hours later, Mom called Rania. "Mr Hamdy's koshari is ready," she said. Rania picked up her paper. She asked, "Have we got any **rope** and **clothes pins**?" "What for?" asked Mom. "To make something," Rania replied.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Mom said, “There are clothes pins under the sink and rope in the garage. Do you need any help?”

“No, thanks, I know what to do,” said Rania. She got the rope, the clothes pins, and the koshari, and went next door.

وبعد ساعات قليلة، نادت الأم على رانيا. قالت: "كشري السيد حمدي جاهز". التقطت رانيا ورقتها. وسألت: هل عندنا حبل ومشبك ملابس؟» سألت الأم "لأي غرض؟". أجابت رانيا: "لصنع شيء ما". قالت الأم: "هناك مشابك ملابس تحت الحوض وحبل في المرآب. هل تحتاجين أي مساعدة؟" قالت رانيا: "لا، شكرًا، أعرف ما يجب فعله". أخذت الحبل، ومشابك الملابس، والكشري، وذهبت إلى البيت المجاور.

“I’m sorry you hurt your leg,” she said. “Mom made you some lunch. Did you feed the birds today?” “Thank you,” said Mr Hamdy. “I won’t be able to walk very well for a while. So, I couldn’t feed the birds today. I’m worried that they might go somewhere else for food.” “May I make something in your yard?” asked Rania. “I want to help feed the birds.” “Of course, dear,” he said.

قالت: "أنا آسفة لأن ساقك أصيب". "أمي أعدت لك بعض الغداء. هل أطعمت الطيور اليوم؟" قال السيد حمدي: "شكرًا لك". "لن أتمكن من المشي بشكل جيد لفترة من الوقت. لذلك لم أتمكن من إطعام الطيور اليوم. أنا قلق من أنهم قد يذهبون إلى مكان آخر لتناول الطعام. سألت رانيا "هل يمكنني صنع شيء ما في حديقتك؟". "أريد أن أساعد في إطعام الطيور." قال: "بالطبع يا عزيزتي".

Outside, Rania threw one end of the rope over the branch of a tree. She took two birdfeeders from the tree, and attached them to the rope with clothes pins. Next to Mr Hamdy’s chair, there was a metal gate. Rania put the rope around the **gatepost**, and tied a **knot** to make one big **loop**. She pulled the rope, first the part above the knot, and then the part below it. The birdfeeders moved towards her when she pulled the top part. “It works!” she said. She called Mr Hamdy. “Please, sit here,” she said. “This looks interesting, Rania,” said Mr Hamdy, smiling.

وفي الخارج، ألقت رانيا أحد طرفي الحبل على غصن شجرة. أخذت اثنين من أوعية تغذية الطيور من الشجرة، وربطتهما بالحبل باستخدام مشابك الملابس. بجوار كرسي السيد حمدي، كانت هناك بوابة معدنية. وضعت رانيا الحبل حول عمود البوابة، وعقدت عقدة لعمل حلقة واحدة كبيرة. قامت بسحب الحبل، أولاً الجزء الذي فوق العقدة، ثم الجزء الذي تحتها. تحركت أوعية تغذية الطيور نحوها عندما سحبت الجزء العلوي. قالت "إنها تعمل!" نادت السيد حمدي وقالت: "من فضلك، اجلس هنا". قال السيد حمدي مبتسماً: "يبدو هذا مثيراً للاهتمام يا رانيا".

She gave him some **birdseed** and showed him where to pull on the rope to make the birdfeeders move. Mr Hamdy smiled as he sat in the sun and filled the birdfeeders. When they were ready, Rania helped him pull the rope the other way. The birdfeeders went high up, close to the branches of the tree. The birds flew onto the branches and started to eat. “Thank you, Rania,” he said. “Your invention is fantastic! I can rest and still enjoy the birds.”

أعطته بعض البذور للطيور وبينت له مكان سحب الحبل لتحريك أوعية تغذية الطيور. ابتسم السيد حمدي وهو يجلس في الشمس وملأ أوعية تغذية الطيور. وعندما أصبحوا جاهزين، ساعدته رانيا في سحب الحبل في الاتجاه الآخر. صعدت أوعية الطيور إلى أعلى، بالقرب من أغصان الشجرة. طارت الطيور إلى الأغصان وبدأت في الأكل. قال: "شكراً لك يا رانيا اختراعك رائع! يمكنني الراحة والاستمتاع بالطيور."

Listen and read.

What does Rania's mom want to help with?

The next day, Rania was in the kitchen with her mom.

في اليوم التالي، كانت رانيا في المطبخ مع والدتها.

"I really enjoyed making the birdfeeder for Mr Hamdy, Mom," said Rania.

قالت رانيا: "لقد استمتعت حقًا بصنع جهاز تغذية الطيور للسيد حمدي يا أمي".

"You have lots of good ideas, Rania. You're very **creative**. Can you help me solve a problem? We're going to stay with your grandparents tomorrow and we'll be away for a week. Your father has planted some **vegetables** in the garden, but who will **water** them? We can't ask Mr Hamdy."

"لديك الكثير من الأفكار الجيدة يا رانيا. أنتِ مبدعة للغاية. هل يمكنك مساعدتي في حل مشكلة؟ سنقيم عند أجدادك غدًا وسنغيب لمدة أسبوع. لقد زرع والدك بعض الخضار في الحديقة، ولكن من سيسقيها؟ لا نستطيع أن نطلب ذلك من السيد حمدي".

Rania thought for a few moments and then she said, "I've got an idea!"

فكرت رانيا للحظات ثم قالت: "لدي فكرة!"

Rania found four clay plant pots in the garden. Each pot had a hole in the bottom. Then she found four small stones and four bigger flat stones. She went inside and got some glue, and brought her mom into the garden.

وجدت رانيا أربعة أواني نباتات طينية في الحديقة. وكان لكل إناء ثقب في القاع. ثم وجدت أربعة أحجار صغيرة وأربعة أحجار مسطحة أكبر. ذهبت إلى الداخل وأحضرت بعض الغراء، وأحضرت والدتها إلى الحديقة.

"Look, Mom," she said. Rania put some glue on each small stone and put them inside the plant pots to cover the holes. Then she put the plant pots deep into the soil between the vegetables in the garden. She filled the pots with water and **covered** them with the flat stones and soil.

قالت: "انظري يا أمي". وضعت رانيا بعض الغراء على كل حجر صغير ووضعته داخل أواني النباتات لتغطية الثقوب. ثم قامت بوضع أواني النباتات في عمق التربة بين الخضروات الموجودة في الحديقة. ملأت الأواني بالماء وغطتهم بالحجارة المسطحة والتراب.

"What are you doing Rania? How will that help?" asked her mom.

سألت والدتها: "ماذا تفعلين يا رانيا؟ كيف سيساعد ذلك؟"

"The plant pots are made of clay, so the water will slowly go through the pots into the soil. When we come back next week, the pots will be empty and the vegetables will be green and healthy," explained Rania.

"إن أواني النباتات مصنوعة من الطين، وبالتالي فإن الماء سوف يمر ببطء عبر الأواني إلى التربة. وأوضحت رانيا: "عندما نعود الأسبوع المقبل، ستكون الأواني فارغة وستكون الخضروات خضراء وصحية".

"Rania, what a clever idea! Your father will be so pleased! Thank you," said her mom.

قالت والدتها: "رانيا، يا لها من فكرة ذكية! سيكون والدك سعيدًا جدًا! شكرًا لك."

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who is Rania's neighbor?

....

2. What did her neighbor do every morning?

....

3. What did he sit on?

....

4. Why did he sit on a chair?

....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mr Hamdy put .... into the birdfeeders.
   a) birdseed b) books c) water d) plants
2. Rania tied a .... in the rope. This made a loop.
   a) knee b) knot c) clothes pin d) birdseed
3. My mother uses plastic ..... for attaching wet clothes to the clothes line.
   a) clothes pins b) loop c) rope d) knot
4. My brother put food for birds in the ....
   a) birdfeeders b) gateposts c) birdseed d) rope
5. He fell and .... his leg.
   a) put b) hurt c) heart d) caught

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is - using - What - Mr Hamdy - help - to - him - walk - ?

....

2. the gatepost - Rania - put - rope - the - around - .

....

3. does - and - Why - Rania - use - pencils - paper - ?

....

4. are - under - clothes pins - sink - There - the - .

....

Writing Corner

Filter straws

When we think of drinking straws, we usually think of drinking something tasty. However, one type of straw solves problems caused by dirty water. A filter straw removes dangerous bacteria from water. The bacteria can't pass through the straw. This makes the water safe to drink. In this way, filter straws have prevented diseases in many countries, so fewer people are getting sick.

Writing in Ancient Egypt

In Ancient Egypt, it was important to write down decisions, record events, and tell stories. For this, people needed paper and ink. Papyrus was a type of thick paper made from reeds. It wasn't as smooth as the paper we use today, but it changed how people communicated. The Ancient Egyptians also created an early type of ink. They burned wood or oil, and mixed it with water. Then they used the ink to write on the papyrus.

- Write an email.

The Seabin Invention

From	:	Ali@gmail.com
To	:	Huda@gmail.com
Subject	:	The seabin invention

Dear Huda,

How are you? I'm writing to tell you about a solution to the problem of trash in the sea. The seabin is an interesting solution that catches trash in the sea. It's made up of a filter, pump, and bucket. Firstly, it helps remove many things from the ocean, for example, plastic, paper, and cardboard. Secondly, it also helps remove fuel and oil from the water and this makes the water cleaner and safer for sea life.

Yours,

Ali

Send | Saved

Help your child write paragraphs and email.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرات وبريد إلكتروني.

Review on Unit (7)

Vocabulary

edible cutlery	أدوات المائدة الصالحة للأكل	angelfish	السمكة القمرية	plow	محراث
bike path	مسار دراجات	healthy	صحي	engines	محركات
decompose	يتحلل	a coral reef	شعاب مرجانية	solution	حل
prevent	يمنع	smooth	أملس	problem	مشكلة
glow-in-the-dark	منير في الظلام	a sea turtle	سلحفاة بحرية	effect	تأثير
filter straw	شفاطة لتنقية المياه	pops	أصوات فرقعة	trap	مصيدة / فخ
Tutankhamun	توت عنخ آمون	driverless	ذاتي القيادة	bacteria	بكتيريا
competition	مسابقة	control	يتحكم	knot	عقدة
recycle	يعيد استخدام	interactive	تفاعلي	loop	حلقة
the future	المستقبل	planetarium	القبة السماوية	rope	حبل
junk food	طعام غير صحي	exist	يوجد	exciting	مثير
king	ملك	toothpaste	معجون أسنان	magazine	مجلة
chips	رقائق / مقرمشات	pain	ألم	period	فترة
birdfeeder	وعاء تغذية الطيور	mint	نعناع	diseases	أمراض
birdseed	طعام الطيور	paste	معجون	ink	حبر
clothes pins	مشابك ملابس	gatepost	سارية البوابة	safe	آمن
inventions	اختراعات	knives	سكاكين	flour	دقيق
blog	مدونة	spoons	ملاعق	rice	أرز
sea life	الحياة البحرية	plastic	بلاستيك	camera	كاميرا
cyclists	راكبي الدراجات	tasty	لذيذ	important	هام
dangerous	خطير	comments	تعليقات	ocean	محيط
solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية	material	مادة خام	mouse	فأر
environment	البيئة	interviewer	مُحاور	planet	كوكب

Help your child revise unit (7).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة السابعة.



(If) Second Conditional

"إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الثانية

Usage الاستخدام

1) We use it to talk about a situation that is imaginary or unlikely to happen.

نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الثانية للتحدث عن موقف خيالي أو من المحتمل عدم حدوثه.

If + past simple , subject + would / could + inf.

e.g. If I went in a time machine, I'd go to Ancient Egypt.

Subject + would / could + inf. + if + past simple

e.g. I would go to the future if I went on a time machine.

Question السؤال

If + past simple , would + subject + inf. ..?

e.g. If you had a lot money, would you buy a phone?

Would + subject + inf. + if + past simple ..?

e.g. Would you buy a phone if you had a lot of money?

as + adjective + as

- We use as + adjective + as to compare. The affirmative form means that the two things we are comparing the same in some way.

نستخدم (as + adjective + as) عند المقارنة. ويفيد هذا التركيب في حالة الأثبات التشابه والتماثل في أمر ما بين شيئين.

e.g. Ancient Egyptian toothpaste was almost as good as modern toothpaste!

بمعنى أن معجون الأسنان في مصر القديمة كان جيدًا تقريبًا مثل معجون الأسنان الحديث.

not as + adjective + as

- The negative form means that the two things are different.

أما في صيغة النفي فمعناه أن الشيئين مختلفان.

e.g. Traveling wasn't as easy as it is today. لم يكن السفر سهلًا مثل اليوم.

بمعنى أن السفر كان صعبًا، لكنه الآن أسهل.

Help your child revise unit (7).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة السابعة.

Dictation on Unit (7)

Lesson (1)

بكتيريا	يمنع ....
أمراض	مسار الدراجات ....
يتحلل	أدوات المائدة الصالحة للأكل ....

Lesson (2)

مسابقة	مثير ....
المستقبل	مجلة ....
طعام غير صحي	فترة ....
ملك	توت عنخ آمون ....

Lesson (3)

سلحفاة بحرية	السمكة القمرية ....
شعاب مرجانية	أملس ....

Lesson (4)

تفاعلي	ذاتي القيادة ....
القبة السماوية	يتحكم ....
....	تحت الماء ....

Lesson (5)

محراث	نعناع ....
محركات	معجون ....
ألم	حبر ....
معجون أسنان	يوجد ....

Lesson (6)

مصيدة / فخ	حل ....
يعيد تدوير	مشكلة ....

Lesson (7)

وعاء تغذية الطيور	عقدة ....
طعام الطيور	حلقة ....
مشابك ملابس	حبل ....
سارية البوابة	يربط ....

Exam on Unit (7)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What did the ancient Egyptians want to keep?

....

2. Were clean teeth important to them?

....

3. What did they invent?

....

4. What did they mix into a paste?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

straw - bacteria - prevented - filter - drinking

When we think of drinking straws, we usually think of drinking something tasty. However, one type of 1).......................... solves problems caused by dirty water. A filter straw removes dangerous bacteria from water. The 2).......................... can't pass through the straw. This makes the water safe to drink. In this way, 3).......................... straws have 4).......................... diseases in many countries, so fewer people are getting sick.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

We think our modern world is full of exciting new inventions. However, the Ancient Egyptians were as good as modern people at inventing new things. We still use many Ancient Egyptian inventions today. They've existed for thousands of years. That's the sign of a good invention! For example, many ideas that are still important in modern medicine come from these times. Ancient Egyptians were as interested in health and medicine as we are. They understood how the human body worked, and used herbs to stop pain and diseases.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The opposite of the underlined word "modern" is ....

   a) old b) new c) tall d) good

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

2. The main idea of the text is about "Ancient Egyptian ....".

a) homes b) inventions c) food d) clothes

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did the Ancient Egyptians use to stop pain? ....

4. Were the Ancient Egyptian inventions important? ....

4 The Reader.

A) Read and write YES or NO.

1. "What shall we do? I'm really worried," said Bassant. (..........)
2. "Let's go and talk to Mr Madhat to see if that's OK," said Nadine. (..........)

B) Read and answer the questions.

3. Why were the newspaper team happy but nervous, too? ....
4. Who helped the children to put the articles on the school website? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If we made a time machine, we .... to different places.
   a) could go b) go c) will go d) went
2. If you .... in time machine, where would you go?
   a) travel b) travels c) traveled d) traveling
3. I think ink is .... useful as paper.
   a) more b) less c) as d) much
4. Ali is as .... as Hani.
   a) the fastest b) faster c) fastest d) fast

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. does - the - Where - camera - photos - take - ? ....
2. children - The - went - the planetarium - inside - . ...

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Plastic pollution

Guiding elements:

(sea - trash - problems - environment)

Unit 8

I can do it!

أستطيع أن أفعل ذلك!



In this unit, the students will ...

- read and work out meaning of new words from context. يقرأ ويستنبط معاني الكلمات الجديدة من السياق.
- understand and use the present continuous for future. يفهم ويستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل.
- ask for and give advice. يطلب النصيحة ويقدمها.
- listen for details and take notes. يستمع للتفاصيل ويدوّن الملاحظات.
- understand the writer's opinion in a text. يفهم رأي الكاتب في النص.
- understand and use commands and requests in reported speech. يفهم ويستخدم الأوامر والطلبات في الكلام المنقول.
- write a personal statement. يكتب بياناً شخصياً.
- understand the main ideas in summaries. يفهم الأفكار الرئيسية في الملخصات.

Lesson (1) WHAT WOULD YOU DO?

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

afraid	خائف	anxious about	قلق بشأن
determined	عازم / مصمم	embarrassed about	مُحرَج - مرتبك بشأن
independent	مستقل	patient	صبور

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

quiet	هادئ	sad	حزين
space	مساحة / فراغ	movie theater	سينما
movie	فيلم	instead	بدلًا (من)
busy	مشغول	presentation	عرض تقديمي
aquarium	معرض أحياء مائية	scary	مُخيف
silly	سخيف	solutions	حلول
worried	قلق (يشعر بالقلق)	nervous	متوتر / عصبي
calmly	بهدوء	frightened	مرعوب
results	نتائج	agree x disagree	يوافق x لا يوافق

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined
wait	ينتظر	waited	waited
prepare	يُجهز / يُعد	prepared	prepared
practice	يتدرب	practiced	practiced
hope	يأمل / يتمنى	hoped	hoped
explain	يوضح / يفسر	explained	explained
try	يحاول	tried	tried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
tell	يُخبر	told	told
stick	يلصق	stuck	stuck
find	يجد	found	found
feel	يشعر	felt	felt

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

find out	يكتشف / يعرف	wait for	ينتظر (شخص / شئ)
look for	يبحث عن	make lots of notes	يدون الكثير من الملاحظات
try hard	يحاول بجد	make them happy	يجعلهم سعداء

You know your own mind. أنت تعرف ما تريد.

Definitions تعريفات

independent	happy to do something on your own	مستقل
determined	believing that you will do or finish something	مُصمم / عازم
patient	able to wait calmly for a long time	صبور
afraid	scared or frightened of something	خائف
anxious	worried or nervous about something	قلق / متوتر
embarrassed	worried about what other people think, or feeling bad about something you did or said	مُحرج / مرتبك

Listen and read.



What would you do?

1- Imagine your friend was quiet and sad for a week. What would you do?
تخيل أن صديقك ظل هادئاً وحزيناً لمدة أسبوع. ماذا كنت ستفعل؟

a. Write a text message or email to say that you are there if they want to talk.
اكتب رسالة نصية أو بريدًا إلكترونيًا لتخبر أنك موجود إذا أراد التحدث.

b. Ask questions to find out what's wrong. اطرح الأسئلة لمعرفة المشكلة.

c. Give them some space, and wait for them to tell you the problem.
امنحه بعض المساحة، وانتظر حتى يخبرك بالمشكلة.

2- Imagine your friend wanted to go to the movie theater the day before your exam. What would you do?
تخيل أن صديقك أراد الذهاب إلى السينما في اليوم السابق لامتحانك. ماذا كنت ستفعل؟

a. Say no, but look for a movie you can go to next weekend instead.
تقول لا، ولكن ابحث عن فيلم يمكنك الذهاب إليه في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع القادمة بدلاً من ذلك.

b. Do lots of study now, so you can go out before the exam.
تقوم بالكثير من المذاكرة الآن، حتى تتمكن من الخروج قبل الامتحان.

c. Say that you're too busy. تقول إنك مشغول جدًا.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

3- Imagine you were anxious about giving a presentation in class. How would you prepare?

٣. تخيل أنك قلق بشأن تقديم عرض تقديمي في الفصل. كيف تستعد؟

a. Ask somebody to listen to you practice and give you advice.

تطلب من شخص ما أن يستمع إليك أثناء التدريب ويقدم لك النصيحة.

b. Watch videos of other people giving presentations to get some advice.

تشاهد مقاطع فيديو لأشخاص آخرين يقدمون عروضًا تقديمية للحصول على بعض النصائح.

c. Make lots of notes and stick them around your house to help you learn it.

تقوم بتدوين الكثير من الملاحظات والصقها في أنحاء منزلك لتساعدك على تعلمها.

4- Imagine your friend wanted to visit the aquarium, but you were afraid of fish. What would you do?

4- تخيل أن صديقك أراد زيارة معرض الأحياء المائية ولكنك تخاف من الأسماك. ماذا ستفعل؟

a. Go with them, and hope the fish aren't as scary as you imagine!

تذهب معهم، وتأمل ألا تكون الأسماك مخيفة كما تتخيل!

b. Say no, but don't tell them why. You don't want to look silly.

تقول لا، لكن لا تخبرهم بالسبب. أنت لا تريد أن تبدو سخيفًا.

c. Explain that you don't like fish, but you'd like to do something else.

تشرح أنك لا تحب الأسماك، ولكنك ترغب في القيام بشيء آخر.

Your results!

Mostly a: You always try hard, and you're a good friend. You like to be with other people, and you want to make them happy.

في الغالب أ: أنت دائمًا تحاول جاهدًا، وأنت صديق جيد. تحب أن تكون مع الآخرين، وتريد أن تجعلهم سعداء.

Mostly b: You are a determined person. You work hard to find solutions to problems, and you can feel embarrassed easily.

في الغالب ب: أنت شخص حازم. تعمل بجد لإيجاد حلول للمشاكل، ومن الممكن أن تشعر بالإحراج بسهولة.

Mostly c: You're patient and independent – you know your own mind. You're a good friend, and you're kind to yourself as well.

في الغالب ج: أنت صبور ومستقل، وتعرف ما تريد. أنت صديق جيد، وأنت لطيف مع نفسك أيضًا.

General Activities

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. When did you visit Anas?

....

2. How was Anas?

....

3. What did you tell him?

....

4. Why did you give him some space?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

patient - looking - answers - independent - box

Nada got mostly C 1) .... This means that she is 2) .... and 3) .... However, Lina disagrees. She says that Nada doesn't like 4) .... for things. Nada agrees with Lina.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If your friend is sad, give him some .... and wait for him to talk.
   a) space b) line c) period d) sentence
2. Ask questions to find .... what's wrong.
   a) in b) from c) out d) down
3. Say no, but look .... a movie you can go to next weekend instead,
   a) out b) for c) in d) at
4. Do lots .... study now.
   a) of b) in c) out d) from
5. "..................................." means happy to do something on your own.
   a) Anxious b) Afraid c) Independent d) Patient

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

6. You work .... to find solutions to problems.
   a) hardly b) easily c) hard d) quietly
7. When you believe that you will do or finish something, it means you are ....
   a) patient b) determined c) afraid d) embarrassed
8. .... lots of notes and stick them around your house to help you learn it.
   a) Make b) Do c) Have d) Play
9. If you are ...., then you are scared or frightened of something.
   a) quiet b) happy c) calm d) afraid
10. "............... "means you are worried about what other think or feeling bad about something you did or said.
    a) Determined b) Embarrassed c) Afraid d) Patient
11. To be able to wait calmly for a long time means you are ....
    a) hard b) happy c) good d) patient
12. If you are worried or nervous about something, this means you are ....
    a) afraid b) anxious c) quiet d) sad

4 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. likes - solutions - She - to - problems - find - out - to - .

   ....

2. that - helps - always - He - Lina - says - him - .

   ....

3. silly - don't - You - want - look - to - .

   ....

5 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Guiding elements: **My friend's problem**

(quiet and sad - ask questions - laugh - space)

....

....

store	متجر	excited	متحمس
awesome	رائع	meal	وجبة
auntie	عمة / خالة	cookies	كعك محلي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
email	يرسل بريد إلكتروني	emailed	emailed
cook	يطبخ	cooked	cooked
walk	يمشي	walked	walked
stay	يبقى / يمكث	stayed	stayed
paint	يدهن	painted	painted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
take	يأخذ / يلتقط	took	taken
show	يعرض / يوضح / يبين	showed	shown
come	يأتي	came	come
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

It will be a surprise!	سوف تكون مفاجأة!	go on vacation	يذهب في إجازة
live by	يعيش بجوار	take photos	يلتقط صور فوتوغرافية
draw pictures	يرسم صورًا	look after	يعتني بـ / يرعى
stay at home	يبقى بالمنزل	have a party	يقيم حفلة

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (2)

Listen and read.

Hello Youssef,

How are you? The last time you emailed, you said your grandma was sick. I hope she's better now.

My parents are very busy this week, so I'm making dinner this evening.

My sisters are going to the store this afternoon to buy the food we need.

Then, at five o'clock, I'm cooking my parents' favorite meal. It's hawawshi! It will be a surprise. I hope they like it! I'm helping my little brother with his homework tomorrow, too. My dad usually does that, but I really like doing more to help at home.

What are you doing next week? And are you going on vacation this summer?

Write soon,

Yaseen

مرحبًا يوسف،

كيف حالك؟ آخر مرة قمت بإرسال بريد إلكتروني، قلت أن جدتك كانت مريضة.

آمل أن تكون أفضل الآن. والدي مشغولان للغاية هذا الأسبوع، لذا سأقوم بإعداد العشاء هذا المساء. ستذهب أخواتي إلى المتجر بعد ظهر هذا اليوم لشراء الطعام الذي نحتاجه. ثم، في الساعة الخامسة، سأقوم بطهي الوجبة المفضلة لوالدي. إنه الحواوشي! ستكون مفاجأة. أتمنى أن يحبوه! سأساعد أخي الصغير في واجباته المدرسية غدًا أيضًا. والدي يفعل ذلك عادة، لكني أحب فعل المزيد للمساعدة في المنزل.

ماذا ستفعل في الأسبوع القادم؟ وهل ستذهب في إجازة هذا الصيف؟

اكتب قريبًا،

ياسين

Hi Yaseen!

Thanks for your email, and I hope the cooking is fun! Thank you for asking about my grandma. She's OK, but I'm doing her shopping tomorrow because she can't walk far yet.

I'm very excited because I'm staying with my cousins next week, just for the weekend. I'm helping them to paint their boat – it's very old. They live by the sea, so it will be awesome! I'll take lots of photos and show them to you.

We aren't going on vacation this summer. Our cousins are coming here to visit us, so we'll take them to lots of different places in the city. Are you going anywhere this summer?

See you soon,

Youssef

مرحبًا ياسين!

شكرًا على بريدك الإلكتروني، وآمل أن يكون الطبخ ممتعًا! شكرًا لسؤالك عن جدتي. إنها بخير، لكنني سأقوم بالتسوق لها غدًا لأنها لا تستطيع المشي بعيدًا بعد.

أنا متحمس للغاية لأنني سأقيم مع أبناء عمومتي الأسبوع المقبل، فقط لقضاء عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. سوف أساعدهم في طلاء قاربهم، فهو قديم جدًا. إنهم يعيشون بجانب البحر، لذلك سيكون الأمر رائعًا! سألتقط الكثير من الصور وأعرضها لك.

لن نذهب في إجازة هذا الصيف. سيأتي أبناء عمومتنا إلى هنا لزيارتنا، لذلك سنأخذهم إلى العديد من الأماكن المختلفة في المدينة. هل ستذهب إلى أي مكان هذا الصيف؟

أراك قريبًا،

يوسف

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



The Present Continuous Tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

Form التكوين

Subject + (am / is / are) + (v + ing)

e.g. I'm walking to school. - She is reading a book.

Usage الاستخدام

- **To express an action that is happening now.** للتعبير عن حدث يحدث الآن.

e.g. They are watching TV now.

Listen! استمع!	today اليوم	at present في الوقت الحاضر
Look! انظر!	now الآن	at the moment في هذه اللحظة

e.g. Listen! The girl is singing.

- **We can also use it to talk about arrangements in the future.**

يمكننا أيضًا استخدامه للحديث عن الترتيبات في المستقبل.

e.g. I'm helping my little brother with his homework tomorrow.

- **We often use a time phrase to show when this will happen. Time phrases include:**

غالبًا ما نستخدم عبارة زمنية لإظهار متى سيحدث هذا. تشمل العبارات الزمنية ما يلي:

Later فيما بعد	this evening هذا المساء	next week الأسبوع القادم
next month الشهر القادم	tomorrow غدًا	at five o'clock الساعة الخامسة

e.g. Heba is going on vacation next week.

Negative النفي

Subject + (am / is / are) + not + (v + ing)

e.g. I am not collecting eggs.

Yes / No question

Is + (he / she / it / a singular noun) + (v + ing)...?

e.g. Is he walking to school?

- Yes, he is. - No, he isn't.

Are + (we / you / they / a plural noun) + (v + ing)...?

e.g. Are they watching a TV program?

- Yes, they are. - No, they aren't.

Help your child use the present continuous for future.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل.

Lesson (2)

Wh question

Q.W + (is / are) + subject + (v + ing)...?

e.g. **What** is he **doing** now? - He is playing sports.

What are you **doing** at the moment? - I'm studying my lessons.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... Yaseen's sisters visiting the store now?
   a) Am b) Is c) Are d) Can
2. When is he .... the meal?
   a) cook b) cooking c) cooks d) cooked
3. Is Youssef .... his cousins now?
   a) visited b) visits c) visit d) visiting
4. When .... she helping to paint a boat?
   a) are b) were c) was d) is
5. Hana .... going on vacation next week. She's staying at home.
   a) doesn't b) didn't c) isn't d) wasn't
6. I'm .... cookies for my friend later.
   a) baking b) bake c) baked d) bakes
7. We're helping our parents ....
   a) yesterday b) a week ago c) tomorrow d) last night
8. .... Reem looking after her little brother this evening?
   a) Were b) Are c) Am d) Is
9. Her auntie .... after him this week.
   a) is looking b) are looking c) look d) looks
10. I'm .... dinner this evening.
    a) make b) makes c) made d) making

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. My sisters are going to the store .... (yesterday).
2. I'm .... (cook) my parent's favorite meal.
3. She's .... (do) her shopping tomorrow.
4. They .... (stay) with their cousins next week.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who are busy this week?

....

2. Where are your sisters going?

....

3. When are you cooking your parents' favorite meal?

....

4. What is the meal?

....

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

OK - cooking - see - family - doing

Anas : Hi, Seif! I'm sorry to hear that your grandma was sick.
Seif : Hello, Anas! Thanks, but she's 1) .... now.
Anas : Great! What are you 2) .... this evening?
Seif : I'm 3) .... dinner for my parents.
Anas : Fantastic! Do you like helping at home?
Seif : Yes, very much. I love helping my 4) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... Layan making cake later?
   a) Are b) Am c) Is d) Did
2. They are .... a party tomorrow.
   a) have b) has c) had d) having
3. Lots of friends are .... to the party.
   a) come b) coming c) comes d) came
4. I'm helping my little brother with his homework ....
   a) yesterday b) last night c) tomorrow d) ago
5. My grandma was in hospital. She was ....
   a) well b) sick c) happy d) excited
6. I'm going to the .... to buy the food I need.
   a) farm b) bank c) store d) cafē

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2)



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hi Yaseen!

Thanks for your email, and I hope the cooking is fun! Thank you for asking about my grandma. She's OK, but I'm doing her shopping tomorrow because she can't walk far yet. I'm very excited because I'm staying with my cousins next week, just for the weekend. I'm helping them to paint their boat – it's very old. They live by the sea, so it will be awesome! I'll take lots of photos and show them to you. We aren't going on vacation this summer. Our cousins are coming here to visit us, so we'll take them to lots of different places in the city. Are you going anywhere this summer?

See you soon,

Youssef

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Youssef is doing his .... 's shopping tomorrow.
   a) father   b) grandma   c) mother   d) grandpa
2. The underlined word "awesome" means ....
   a) fantastic   b) bad   c) boring   d) lazy

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why is Youssef doing the shopping for his grandma? ....
4. Who is coming to visit you this summer? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. parents - meal - Yaseen's - know - the - don't - about - .
2. summer - vacation - We - going - this - aren't - on - .
3. going - summer - you - anywhere - Are - this - ?

6 Write an email of SEVENTY (70) words about:

My arrangements for this summer

Your friend's email address is Youssef@gmail.com. Your name is Yassen and your email address is Yassen@gmail.com.

Guiding elements:

(visiting - Luxor - take photos - go with family - spend a week)

Lesson (3) IT SHOULD BE FUN!

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

advice	نصيحة	energy	طاقة	fun	متعة
pasta	مكرونة	team	فريق	extra	إضافي
event	حدث	competition	مسابقة	paint	دهان / يدهن

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
enter	يدخل	entered	entered
disappoint	يُحبط	disappointed	disappointed
behave	يتصرف	behaved	behaved
talk	يتكلم	talked	talked
perform	يؤدي	performed	performed
wear out	يُنهك - يتعب	wore out	worn out
think	يعتقد / يفكر	thought	thought
spend	يقضي "وقتاً"	spent	spent
tell	يخبر	told	told

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

in a row	في صف (طابور)	warn out	يبلى / يتآكل / ينهك
a bit sad	حزين إلى حد ما	take part	يشارك
ask for	يطلب	part of	جزء من
find out	يعرف / يكتشف	make sure	يتأكد

Definitions تعريفات

disappoint	to behave in a way that makes somebody feel a bit sad.	يُحبط / يُخيب الظن
in a row	one after the other, in order.	في صف (طابور)
worn out	very tired.	منهك

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (3)

Study the following

1. Mrs Fayza says that it should be fun to take part.

تقول السيدة فايزة إن المشاركة يجب أن تكون ممتعة.

2. Randa asks Ms Fayza for advice. راندا تطلب النصيحة من السيدة فايزة.

3. Mrs Fayza says that getting enough sleep will give you more energy.

تقول السيدة فايزة إن الحصول على قسط كافٍ من النوم سيمنحك المزيد من الطاقة.

4. Foods like rice and pasta will give Randa extra energy.

الأطعمة مثل الأرز والمكرونة ستمنح راندا طاقة إضافية.

5. Mrs Fayza also says that being part of a team is great.

تقول السيدة فايزة أيضا أن كونك جزءًا من فريق أمر رائع.

Advice النصيحة

Asking for advice: عند طلب النصيحة يمكن أن نستخدم التركيب الآتي:

- If + past simple, what would you do?

Giving advice: عند إعطاء النصيحة يمكن أن نستخدم التركيب الآتي:

- I would + inf...

A : If you had a test, what would you do? لو كان لديك اختبار، ماذا ستفعل؟

B : I would study a little bit every day. كنت سأذاكر قليلًا كل يوم.

A : If your friend was sick, what would you do? لو كانت صديقتك مريضة، ماذا ستفعلين؟

B : I would tell her to go to the doctor. سأخبرها أن تذهب إلى الطبيب.

A : If you had to give a presentation, what would you do?

لو كان عليك تقديم عرض تقديمي، ماذا ستفعل؟

B : I would make lots of notes, and practice it. سوف أدون الكثير من الملاحظات وأتدرب عليها.

A : If you wanted to start a school newspaper, what would you do?

إذا أردت أن تبدأ صحيفة مدرسية، ماذا ستفعل؟

B : I would talk to people in the school, and find out interesting stories.

سوف أتحدث مع الناس في المدرسة وأكتشف قصصًا مثيرة للاهتمام.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب. (٤)

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What should you do to prepare for important events?

....

2. Should the events be fun?

....

3. What will give you more energy?

....

4. Which is great, being a part of a team or work alone?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

notes - presentation - should - food - practice

Amira: I want to ask you for advice, Safia.

Safia : No problem. What do you want to ask about?

Amira: I want to give a 1) ....

What 2) .... I do?

Safia : You should make lots of 3) ....

Amira: Is there anything else?

Safia : Yes, you should 4) .... it.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If you want to be healthy, you should have more ....

a) sweets b) oil c) sleep d) fizzy drinks

2. To be good at sports, you should have .... food.

a) normal b) special c) ordinary d) common

3. The doctor's .... was not to eat fats.

a) advice b) flat c) nurse d) device

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4. "..............................." out means to be very tired.

a) Wrote b) Bought c) Worn d) Thought

5. One after the other, in order, means in a ....

a) glue b) row c) flow d) saw

6. To .... means to behave in a way that makes somebody feel a bit sad.

a) encourage b) discourage c) disappoint d) call

4 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. part - should - to - take - It - be - fun - .

....

2. of - great - Being - team - part - a - is - .

....

3. day - a little - study - I - bit - every - would - .

....

4. would - a test - you - If - had - what - you - do - ?

....

5 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

An art competition

Guiding elements:

(12:00 Saturday - paint - well - planning - pencils and paint)

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson (4) STRONGER TOGETHER

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

title	عنوان	article	مقال
activities	أنشطة	experience	خبرة / تجربة
confused	مرتبك / متحير	unsure	غير متأكد
opinion	رأي	leader	قائد
follower	تابع	success	النجاح
successful	ناجح	quickly	بسرعة
carefully	بعناية / بحرص		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
focus	يركز	focused	focused
prefer	يفضل	preferred	preferred
change	يغير	changed	changed
inspire	يُلهم	inspired	inspired
guide	يرشد	guided	guided
achieve	ينجز / يحقق	achieved	achieved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
mean	يعني / يقصد	meant	meant
find	يجد	found	found
meet	يقابل	met	met
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
learn	يتعلم	learnt (learned)	learnt (learned)

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (4)

Important expressions and prepositions
تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

work on (a project)	يعمل على (مشروع)	out of	خارجًا عن
focus on	يركز على	take part in	يشارك في
make new friends	يكون صداقات جديدة	make friends	يكون صداقات
full of	مملوء بـ	take turns	يتناوب الأدوار
take time	يأخذ وقت	take an interest in	يهتم بـ
common goal	هدف مشترك (شائع)	find out	يكتشف
on their own	بمفردهم		

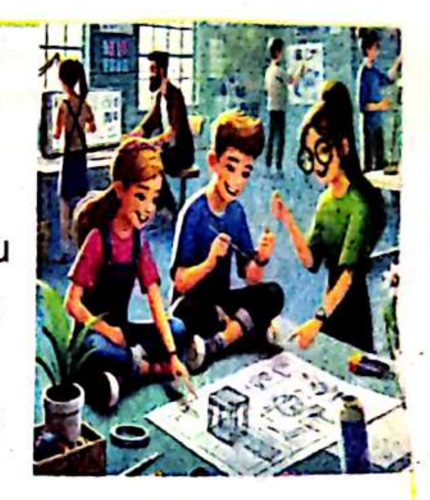
Definitions
تعريفات

take part	join in	يشارك
take time	do something carefully	يستغرق وقتًا
take turn	people do something, one person at a time	يتناوب الأدوار
take an interest	be curious about	يهتم

Listen and read. When might you work in a team?

استمع واقرأ. متى يمكنك العمل ضمن فريق؟

Stronger together



Have you ever been part of a team? Maybe you've worked on a class project, played in a sports competition, or answered questions in a school quiz. There are lots of times when you can work in a team at school and in clubs, or in activities out of school. Some people say that they like working on their own. That's fine – it's good to be independent and to focus on your work. However, if you work in a team, you might find that it's *fun* to take part. You might learn a lot!

هل سبق لك أن كنت جزءًا من فريق؟ ربما كنت قد عملت في مشروع صفي، أو لعبت في مسابقة رياضية، أو أجبت عن الأسئلة في مسابقة المدرسة. هناك الكثير من الأوقات التي يمكنك فيها العمل ضمن فريق في المدرسة وفي النوادي، أو في أنشطة خارج المدرسة. يقول بعض الناس أنهم يحبون العمل بمفردهم. هذا جيد- من الجيد أن تكون مستقلًا وتركز على عملك. ومع ذلك، إذا كنت تعمل ضمن فريق، فقد تجد أنه من الممتع المشاركة. قد تتعلم الكثير!

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

New friends:

أصدقاء جدد:

When you take part in a new sport, for example, you can easily make new friends. You might meet new people that you haven't met before. Playing together as a team in a game or a competition is a great experience, and you might make friends for life.

عندما تشارك في رياضة جديدة، على سبيل المثال، يمكنك بسهولة تكوين صداقات جديدة. قد تلتقي بأشخاص جدد لم تقابلهم من قبل. يعد اللعب معًا كفريق في لعبة أو مسابقة تجربة رائعة، وقد تتمكن من تكوين صداقات مدى الحياة.

New ideas:

أفكار جديدة:

Have you ever felt confused or unsure when you're working on a project? We all feel like that sometimes. Imagine if you had a whole extra head full of ideas! Or two heads, or three! That's what being in a team is like. Two people have more ideas than one person, and a team of people has even more!

هل شعرت يومًا بالارتباك أو عدم التأكد عندما تعمل على مشروع ما؟ نحن جميعًا نشعر بذلك في بعض الأحيان. تخيل لو كان لديك رأس إضافي كامل مليء بالأفكار! أو رأسين أو ثلاثة! هذا هو ما يشبه التواجد في الفريق. شخصان لديهما أفكار أكثر من شخص واحد، وفريق من الأشخاص لديه أفكار أكثر!

Learn to listen:

تعلم الاستماع:

Do you prefer talking or listening? Some people like to talk a lot. However, it's important to listen, too. A team works best when everybody takes turns to speak, and takes time to listen to each other. You can learn a lot when you take an interest in other people's ideas. This might even mean that you change your opinion.

هل تفضل التحدث أم الاستماع؟ بعض الناس يحبون التحدث كثيرا. ومع ذلك، من المهم الاستماع أيضًا. يعمل الفريق بشكل أفضل عندما يتناوب الجميع في التحدث ويأخذون وقتًا للاستماع لبعضهم البعض. يمكنك أن تتعلم الكثير عندما تهتم بأفكار الآخرين. قد يعني هذا أيضًا أنك ربما تغير رأيك.

Learn about yourself:

تعرف على نفسك:

Are you a leader or a follower? Followers and leaders are both important for the success of a team. Leaders inspire and guide their followers to achieve a common goal. Followers work to achieve the goals by working under the direction of their leaders. When you work in a team, you find out what you're good at, and what you can help others with.

هل أنت قائد أم تابع؟ التابعون والقادة مهمون لنجاح الفريق. يلهم القادة أتباعهم ويوجهونهم لتحقيق هدف مشترك. يعمل التابعون على تحقيق الأهداف من خلال العمل تحت توجيه قادتهم. عندما تعمل ضمن فريق، فإنك تكتشف ما تجيده، وما يمكنك مساعدة الآخرين به.

So, next time you work in a team, try hard to make the team successful. You will learn so much!

لذا، في المرة القادمة التي تعمل فيها ضمن فريق، حاول جاهداً أن تجعل الفريق ناجحاً. سوف تتعلم الكثير!

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Lesson (4)

Listen and read.

Who is happier now than he was in the past



Omar : How was the football game last weekend, Seif?

كيف كانت مباراة كرة القدم في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الماضي، يا سيف؟

Seif : It was really good, thanks, Omar.

لقد كانت جيدة حقًا، شكرًا يا عمر.

Omar : Did you win?

هل فزتم؟

Seif : Yes, we won the game but it wasn't easy. We were losing in the first half. Our captain, Hesham, guided us on how to play the game in the second half. That's why he's a good leader. He had a great plan and we all followed it. We won because of good teamwork.

نعم فزنا بالمباراة لكن الأمر لم يكن سهلا. كنا قد خسرنا في الشوط الأول. أرشدنا قائدنا هشام إلى كيفية لعب المباراة في الشوط الثاني. ولهذا هو قائد جيد. كان لديه خطة رائعة واتبعناها جميعًا. لقد فزنا بسبب العمل الجماعي الجيد.

Omar : That sounds great. You've been happier since you joined the football team.

هذا يبدو رائعًا. لقد كنت أكثر سعادة منذ انضمامك إلى فريق كرة القدم.

Seif : Yes, I have. When we practice, we take turns to play in different positions so I've learned a lot. And I've made some good friends.

نعم. عندما نتدرب، نتناوب اللعب في أماكن مختلفة، لذا تعلمت الكثير. ولقد كونت بعض الأصدقاء الجيدين.

Omar : I'll come and watch your next game.

سآتي وأشاهد مباراتك القادمة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What do you love? ....
2. When can you make new friends? ....
3. What sports can you play with your new friends? ....
4. What makes you a good team? ....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

work - achieve - inspire - game - team

Are you a leader or follower? Followers and leaders are both important for the success of a 1)................ Leaders 2)...................... and guide their followers to 3).................... a common goal. Followers 4)................................ to achieve the goals by working under the direction of their leaders.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Have you ever been part .... a team?
   a) for b) of c) out d) at
2. Everybody should .... turns to speak.
   a) make b) bake c) take d) give
3. It's fun to take .... in a team.
   a) part b) time c) money d) holiday
4. Are you a .... or a follower?
   a) slave b) king c) prince d) leader
5. Some people say that they like working .... their own.
   a) out b) on c) in d) at
6. In a team, you can make .... friends.
   a) young b) older c) old d) new
7. You might make friends .... life.
   a) for b) to c) on d) at
8. Try hard to make the team ....
   a) fail b) success c) successful d) bad

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (4)



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Have you ever been part of a team? Maybe you've worked on a class project, played in a sports competition, or answered questions in a school quiz. There are lots of times when you can work in a team at school and in clubs, or in activities out of school. Some people say that they like working on their own. That's fine – it's good to be independent and to focus on your work. However, if you work in a team, you might find that it's fun to take part. You might learn a lot!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about .... in a team.

   a) fighting b) working c) swimming d) sleeping

2. The underlined words "on their own" mean ....

   a) separate b) together c) alone d) lonely

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What will happen if you work in a team? ....

4. Find a word in the passage that means "join in". ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. turns - team - Did - take - you - your - in - ?

   ....

2. easy - friends - make - team - It's - to - a sports - on - .

   ....

3. people - ideas - Two - have - than - person - more - one - .

   ....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Learn to listen

Guiding elements:

(prefer - important - interest - take turns)

....

....

....

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

flight	طيران	poster	ملصق
project	مشروع	pleased	مسرور
poem	قصيدة	commands	اوامر
instructions	تعليمات	rhyme	قافية / يتناغم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
try	يحاول	tried	tried
check	يفحص	checked	checked
plan	يخطط	planned	planned
rush	يتعجل	rushed	rushed
use	يستخدم	used	used
read	يقرأ	read	read
get	يحصل على	got	got
keep	يحتفظ بـ	kept	kept
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

try your best	ابذل قصارى جهدك
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة
have a break	يستريح
get it right	يفعلها بطريقة صحيحة
make notes	يدون ملاحظات
don't rush	لا تتعجل

Help your child Identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (5)

Listen and read.

Try your best! by Fares

At school, we had a project
On the history of flight.
I had to make a poster,
But I couldn't get it right.

My mom asked me to try my best.
"You can't go wrong," she said.
"But don't forget to have a break!
When you're tired, go to bed!"



My dad told me to stop and think.
"Take time to plan," he said.
"**Don't rush**, use your best ideas,
That's how to get ahead."

My friend told me to ask for help.
"It's good to check," he said.
"If you're not sure, ask a question,
Don't keep it in your head."

My teacher told me to try again.
"Don't be sad," she said.
"Look in books for more ideas,
Make notes on what you've read."

And so, I asked, I read, and tried,
I stopped and had a rest.
Then I planned out my ideas,
My poster was the best!



Reported commands and requests

لتحويل الأمر والطلب إلى كلام غير مباشر نتبع الآتي:

١- نحول said to إلى told أو asked ثم نضع المفعول.

٢- نستخدم to + inf في الجملة المثبتة.

٣- نستخدم not to + inf في الجملة المنفية.

Subject (الفاعل - المتكلم) **+ asked / told + object** (مفعول) **+** **to + inf** / **not to + inf**

e.g. Mom said to Nada, "Can you pick up the books, please?"
Mom asked Nada to pick up the books.

e.g. My friend said to me, "Ask for help."
My friend told me to ask for help.

e.g. My teacher said to me, "Don't be sad."
My teacher told me not to be sad.





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My friend told me .... ask for help.
   a) for   b) to   c) at   d) on
2. Mom told me to .... out and play.
   a) going   b) goes   c) go   d) gone
3. Safia told me .... play in the street.
   a) to not   b) not to   c) don't   d) doesn't
4. The teacher told Seif to .... his book.
   a) open   b) opens   c) opening   d) opened
5. My mom .... me to try my best.
   a) ask   b) asked   c) asking   d) tells

Help your child learn commands and requests in reported speech.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم تحويل الأمر والطلب إلى غير مباشر.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who asked you to try your best?

....

2. What did your mom say?

....

3. What thing shouldn't you forget?

....

4. What do you do when you are tired?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

keep - check - play - learn - ask

My friend told me to ask for help. "It's good to 1) ....," he said. "If you're not sure 2) .... a question. Don't 3) .... it in your head. When you ask, you 4) .... more."

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. At school, we had a project on the history of ....
   a) fly b) flew c) flight d) flown
2. I had to .... a poster.
   a) make b) made c) makes d) making
3. I couldn't get my project ....
   a) left b) north c) write d) right
4. My friend told me to ask .... help.
   a) for b) of c) on d) in
5. My friends asked me to .... them.
   a) helped b) helping c) help d) helps
6. When Seif couldn't get his project right, he felt ....
   a) pleased b) happy c) worried d) excited

7. You can find information ....

   a) in the library b) on a computer game
   c) on a plane d) in a comic book

8. Mom asks him to have a break because he's ....

   a) sick b) late c) tired d) early

9. My mom asked me to .... a break.

   a) had b) has c) having d) have

10. My dad told me .... stop and think.

   a) to b) by c) for d) on

4 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. and play - outside - Dad - me - told - to go - .

   ....

2. asked - Dalia - with - her - homework - to help - me - .

   ....

3. me - to wash - Mom - asked - the dishes - .

   ....

4. to open - Ms Manal - Rashad - his book - told - .

   ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Mom asked me to .... (washed) the dishes.
2. Ms Manal told Ali to .... (opens) his book.
3. My teacher .... (tell) me to try again.
4. My dad told me to .... (stops) and think.
5. My mom asked me to .... (tidied) my room.

Lesson (6) WRITING: A PERSONAL STATEMENT

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

personal statement	بيان شخصي	confident	واثق
independently	باستقلال / بشكل مستقل	anyway	على أي حال
scientist	عالم	inventor	مخترع
future goals	أهداف مستقبلية	introduction	مقدمة
interests	اهتمامات	subheading	عنوان فرعي
option	اختيار	topic	موضوع
community	مجتمع	reason	سبب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
share	يشارك	shared	shared
compete	ينافس	competed	competed
design	يصمم	designed	designed
include	يتضمن / يشمل	included	included
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteered	volunteered
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
win	يفوز	won	won

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

in front of	أمام	group activities	أنشطة جماعية
but it's fun anyway	ولكنه ممتع على أي حال	make lives better	يحسن المعيشة / يجعل المعيشة أفضل

Personal statement

- by Noha Tousson, aged 11

A- Introduction

My name is Noha and I'm in Grade 6. I work hard and I'm confident – I'm happy to share my ideas in front of the class. I enjoy working in a team, and I like working independently, too. I enjoy taking part in group activities.

اسمي نهى وأنا في الصف السادس. أعمل بجد وأنا واثقة من نفسي - ويسعدني أن أشارك أفكاري أمام الفصل. أنا أستمتع بالعمل ضمن فريق، وأحب العمل بشكل مستقل أيضًا. أنا أستمتع بالمشاركة في الأنشطة الجماعية.

B- My favorite subjects

I enjoy studying history and math. I love science, too, because I want to understand how the world works. I also like PE. I've played in some important volleyball matches this year. My team doesn't always win, but it's fun anyway!

أنا أستمتع بدراسة التاريخ والرياضيات. أنا أحب العلوم أيضا، لأنني أريد أن أفهم كيف يعمل العالم. أنا أيضا أحب التربية البدنية. لقد لعبت في بعض مباريات الكرة الطائرة الهامة هذا العام. لا يفوز فريقي دائما، لكن الأمر ممتع على أي حال!

C- My interests

I go to a science club after school. I'm competing in a science competition next week with three friends. We're designing a new robot. I hope our design wins the competition!

أذهب إلى نادي العلوم بعد المدرسة. سأتنافس في مسابقة علمية الأسبوع المقبل مع ثلاثة أصدقاء. نحن نصمم روبوتًا جديدًا. أتمنى أن يفوز تصميمنا بالمسابقة!

D- My future goals

Next year, I would like to do more science activities and visit a science museum. When I'm older, I'd like to be a scientist or an inventor. My science teacher told me to work hard so that I could help people and make lives better.

في العام المقبل، أود القيام بالمزيد من الأنشطة العلمية وزيارة متحف العلوم. عندما أكبر، أود أن أصبح عالمًا أو مخترعًا. أخبرني أستاذ العلوم أن أعمل بجد حتى أتمكن من مساعدة الناس وتحسين حياتهم.

TIP

- A personal statement is a text about YOU! You might write one if you're starting a new school, if you want to join a team, or are volunteering in your community.
- Include lots of information and reasons. This helps the reader really get to know you.
- Use subheadings to tell the reader the topic of each part of the personal statement.

Help your child write a personal statement.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب بيان شخصي.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What grade are you in?

....

2. Why are you happy?

....

3. Do you like working independently?

....

4. What do you enjoy taking part in?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

wins - robot - school - science - friends

I go to a science club after school. I'm competing in a 1) .... competition next week with three 2) .... We're designing a new 3).................... I hope our design 4) .... the competition!

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I'm happy to .... ideas in front of the class.
   a) post   b) share   c) dare   d) care
2. I enjoy taking part .... group activities.
   a) in   b) on   c) at   d) of
3. I love .... because I want to understand how the world works.
   a) art   b) PE   c) science   d) drama
4. I go to a science .... after school.
   a) club   b) hospital   c) house   d) tent
5. In personal statement, you write about ....
   a) nature   b) other people   c) yourself   d) forests

6. In a personal statement, it's important to include lots of ....

   a) photos b) information c) pictures d) posts

7. Subheadings tell the reader about the .... of each part of the text.

   a) topic b) design c) smell d) taste

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I enjoy studying history and math. I love science, too, because I want to understand how the world works. I also like PE. I've played in some important volleyball matches this year. My team doesn't always win, but it's fun anyway!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I enjoy studying history and ....

   a) geography b) religion c) art d) math

2. My team doesn't always ....

   a) win b) gain c) practice d) play

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why do you love science?

....

4. Have you played in any important matches?

....

5 Write a personal statement about yourself

Guiding elements:

(Introduction - My favorite subjects - My interests - My future goals)

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson (7) STORY: LOST IN THE OASIS

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

the scouts	الكشافة	blow	تهب "الرياح" / يطير
sneakers	حذاء رياضي	backpack	حقيبة ظهر
shovel	مجرفة	wheel	عجلة
pack	يحزم "أمتعة"	first aid kit	صندوق إسعافات أولية
oasis	واحة	rip	يمزق
leader	قائد	flashlight	كشاف - مصباح يدوي

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

adventure	مغامرة	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
compass	بوصلة	rug	سجادة صغيرة
lighter	أخف	heavy	ثقيل
sandstorm	عاصفة رملية	hardworking	مجتهد
engine	محرك	allow	يسمح
point	يوجه - يشير	decision	قرار
blanket	بطانية	stuck	عالق - محتجز
determine	يحسم - يعقد العزم	picnic	نزهة خلوية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
hold	يمسك	held	held
blow	تهب	blew	blown

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

take out	يتخلص من	get off	ينزل من "الحافلة"
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	set off	ينطلق - يبدأ رحلة
turn around	يدور	ripped in half	انقسم إلى نصفين
move forward	يسير إلى الأمام	get to	يصل إلى

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

Lost in the oasis

Seleem was really excited to take part in the **Scouts**' desert adventure. The day before, he packed his backpack. However, it was very heavy, and so his mom told him to check if he really needed all that was in it. He packed it again, with her help. This time, he only put in what he needed. He now had a flashlight, a first aid kit, and a water bottle. His friend Asser told him that he would take a compass, so Seleem didn't pack his.

كان سليم متحمسًا جدًا للمشاركة في مغامرة الكشافة الصحراوية. في اليوم السابق، حزم حقيبته. ومع ذلك، كانت ثقيلة جدًا، ولذلك طلبت منه والدته التحقق مما إذا كان يحتاج حقًا إلى كل ما بداخلها. لقد حزمها مرة أخرى بمساعدتها. هذه المرة، لم يضع إلا ما يحتاجه. أصبح لديه الآن مصباح يدوي، صندوق إسعافات أولية، وزجاجة ماء. أخبره صديقه آسر أنه سيأخذ بوصلة، لذلك لم يحزم سليم بوصلته.

They left at ten o'clock the next morning. Everybody met at school, and the Scouts and their teacher traveled by bus to the other side of the **oasis**. The teacher said they would walk in groups to the meeting place. The Scouts were put into groups, and each group had a **leader**. The group leaders were older. There was a prize for the team who got to the meeting place first, and Seleem was determined to win.

غادروا في الساعة العاشرة من صباح اليوم التالي. التقى الجميع في المدرسة، وسافر الكشافة ومعلمهم بالحافلة إلى الجانب الآخر من الواحة. قال المعلم إنهم سيسيرون في مجموعات إلى مكان الاجتماع. تم تقسيم الكشافة إلى مجموعات، وكان لكل مجموعة قائد وكان قادة المجموعة أكبر سنًا. كانت هناك جائزة للفريق الذي وصل إلى مكان اللقاء أولاً، وكان سليم مصمماً على الفوز.

However, it wasn't that easy ...

On the bus, the teacher checked everybody's bags. Unfortunately, Asser's bag was too heavy! The teacher told him to take some things out. Seleem and his friends helped Asser make his bag lighter. He kept his lunch, his sweater, and his map. He took out his sneakers, some games, and some potato chips. And he also took out his compass.

ومع ذلك، لم يكن الأمر بهذه السهولة...

وفي الحافلة، قام المعلم بفحص حقائب الجميع. لسوء الحظ، كانت حقيبة آسر ثقيلة جدًا! أخبره المعلم أن يُخرج بعض الأشياء. ساعد سليم وأصدقاؤه آسر في تخفيف وزن حقيبته. احتفظ بغداءه وسترته وخريطته. أخرج حذائه الرياضي وبعض الألعاب وبعض رقائق البطاطس. وأخرج أيضا بوصلته.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

When they got off the bus, the teacher gave each group a map. He told them they had to go north. The Scouts weren't allowed to use their phones. The groups set off, using the map to follow the road. It was very hot, so after a while, Seleem and his group stopped to have some water. They sat under a tree, but there was suddenly a strong wind. It blew the map out of Seleem's hands! They ran after it, but when they caught it, the map ripped in half.

عندما نزلوا من الحافلة، أعطى المعلم كل مجموعة خريطة. وأخبرهم أن عليهم أن يتجهوا شمالاً. لم يُسمح للكشافة باستخدام هواتفهم. انطلقت المجموعات مستخدمة الخريطة لتتبع الطريق. كان الجو حارًا جدًا، لذا بعد فترة، توقف سليم ومجموعته لتناول بعض الماء. جلسوا تحت شجرة، ولكن فجأةً هبت ريح قوية. لقد طيرت الخريطة من بين يدي سليم! ركضوا خلفها، ولكن عندما أمسكوا بها، تمزقت الخريطة إلى نصفين.

The group couldn't fix the map, so they held the two pieces together. The map was difficult to read, and they weren't sure where to go. Seleem knew they had to go north, so he asked Asser for his compass. Asser looked in his bag, but he didn't have it!

لم تتمكن المجموعة من إصلاح الخريطة، لذلك قاموا بمسك القطعتين معًا. كان من الصعب قراءة الخريطة، ولم يكونوا متأكدين من المكان الذي سيذهبون إليه. عرف سليم أن عليهم التوجه شمالًا، فطلب من آسر بوصلته. نظر آسر في حقيبته، لكنه لم يجدها!

Luckily, Samir had a really good idea. He knew how to use the hands on his watch to find north, by pointing them at the sun.

ولحسن الحظ، كان لدى سمير فكرة جيدة حقًا. كان يعرف كيفية استخدام عقارب ساعته للعثور على الشمال، من خلال توجيهها نحو الشمس.

After a few minutes, the Scouts knew where to go. The group set off again, following Samir. They were the last group to reach the meeting place. However, they won a prize for having the best idea to find north!

وبعد بضع دقائق، عرف الكشافة إلى أين يذهبون. انطلقت المجموعة مرة أخرى متتبعة سمير. كانوا المجموعة الأخيرة التي وصلت إلى مكان الاجتماع. ومع ذلك، فقد فازوا بجائزة لامتلاكهم أفضل فكرة للعثور على الشمال!

Next time, Seleem will make sure he packs a flashlight, a first aid kit, a water bottle … and his compass!

في المرة القادمة، سيتأكد سليم من إحضار مصباح يدوي، وصندوق إسعافات أولية، وزجاجة ماء... وبوصلته!



Listen and read.



One day, Amina, her sister Nadia, her brother Magdy, and her mom were going on an adventure. Mom was driving them to the oasis to see their dad. He was working on an engineering project at the oasis for a few weeks. Amina was really looking forward to seeing him. Mom packed lots of food and water so they could have a picnic on the way. They set off early because the journey was long and it wasn't a good road. Before they set off, Mom asked Amina to run back into the house to get two picnic rugs.

في أحد الأيام، كانت أمينة وشقيقتها نادية وشقيقها مجدي وأمها ذاهبين في مغامرة. كانت الأم تقوم بتوصيلهم بالسيارة إلى الواحة لرؤية والدهم. كان يعمل في مشروع هندسي في الواحة لبضعة أسابيع. كانت أمينة تتطلع حقًا إلى رؤيته. جهزت الأم الكثير من الطعام والماء حتى يتمكنوا من القيام بنزهة في الطريق. انطلقوا مبكرًا لأن الرحلة كانت طويلة ولم يكن الطريق جيدًا. قبل أن ينطلقوا، طلبت الأم من أمينة أن تعود إلى المنزل لإحضار سجادتين لتناول الطعام عليها.

At lunchtime, Mom stopped the car and they had a delicious picnic. Amina noticed that it was getting windy. It looked like there might be a sandstorm. They quickly set off again and Amina was right. Soon they were in the middle of a sandstorm and it was difficult to drive the car. So, Mom stopped the car and they waited. After 20 minutes, the wind stopped but now the car was stuck in the sand! The car wheels turned around but the car didn't move forward.

في وقت الغداء، أوقفت الأم السيارة وقاموا بتناول وجبة لذيذة. لاحظت أمينة أن الجو أصبح عاصفًا. بدا وكأن هناك عاصفة رملية. انطلقوا بسرعة مرة أخرى وكانت أمينة على حق. وسرعان ما أصبحوا وسط عاصفة رملية وكان من الصعب قيادة السيارة. لذا أوقفت الأم السيارة وانتظروا. وبعد 20 دقيقة توقفت الريح ولكن السيارة كانت عالقة في الرمال! أخذت عجلات السيارة تدور في الرمال لكن السيارة لم تتحرك للأمام.

Everybody got out of the car and looked at the sand. Nadia started to cry. Mom took charge and told the children not to worry. She asked Magdy to get the camping shovel, and dig some of the sand from in front of the car.

خرج الجميع من السيارة ونظروا إلى الرمال. بدأت نادية بالبكاء. تولت الأم المسؤولية وأخبرت الأطفال ألا يقلقوا. طلبت من مجدي إحضار جاروف التخييم وحفر بعض الرمال من أمام السيارة.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

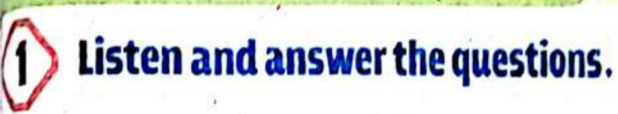
Lesson (7)

She told Amina to get the picnic rugs. When Magdy stopped digging, Mom put the picnic rugs on the ground, in front of the wheels. Then she told the children to get into the car. She turned on the engine and the wheels turned around on the picnic rugs.

طلبت من أمينة أن تحضر سجاد النزهة. عندما توقف مجدي عن الحفر، وضعت الأم سجاد النزهة على الأرض، أمام العجلات. ثم طلبت من الأطفال أن يصعدوا إلى السيارة. قامت بتشغيل المحرك واستدارت العجلات على سجاد النزهة.

Slowly, the car moved forward. Soon, the car was out of the sand and they were on the road! The children laughed. Amina's mom drove very carefully on the sandy road, and an hour later the family arrived at the oasis. They all had a great story to tell Amina's dad!

ببطء، تحركت السيارة إلى الأمام. وسرعان ما خرجت السيارة من الرمال وأصبحوا على الطريق! ضحك الأطفال. قادت والدة أمينة سيارتها بحذر شديد على الطريق الرملي، وبعد ساعة وصلت العائلة إلى الواحة. كان لديهم جميعًا قصة رائعة ليخبروها لوالد أمينة



نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What couldn't the group fix?

....

2. Why couldn't they fix it?

....

3. Who knew that they had to go north?

....

4. Where did Asser look?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

sun - north - legs - hands - pointing

Luckily, Samir had a really good idea. He knew how to use the 1) .... on his watch to find 2).................., by 3) .... them at the 4) ....

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

The children left at ten o'clock the next morning. Everybody met at school, and the Scouts and their teacher traveled by bus to the other side of the oasis. The teacher said they would walk in groups to the meeting place. The Scouts were put into groups, and each group had a leader. The group leaders were older. There was a prize for the team who got to the meeting place first, and Seleem was determined to win.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. They traveled by bus to the other side of the ....
   a) island b) oasis c) forest d) jungle
2. The Scouts were put into ....
   a) lines b) rows c) groups d) piles

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What was Seleem determined to do? ....
4. Where did they meet? ....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The wind .... the map out of his hands.
   a) blew b) sent c) gave d) cut
2. Students who go to a desert adventure are called ....
   a) traders b) scientists c) vets d) scouts
3. The .... is a place in the desert where you can find water and plants.
   a) lake b) island c) oasis d) mountain
4. The person who guides a group of people is their ....
   a) reader b) leader c) president d) king

5 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

My adventure in the desert

Guiding elements:

(last year - lost compass - afraid - my friends)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Writing Corner

My friend's problem

Last week I visited my friend Anas. While I was there, he was quiet and sad. I asked him what was the matter but he refused to tell me anything. I tried to make him happy. I told him some jokes but he didn't laugh. Finally, I decided to give him some space, and wait for him to tell me the problem. Was that right?

Working in a team

Have you ever been part of a team? Maybe you've worked on a class project, played in a sports competition, or answered questions in a school quiz. There are lots of times when you can work in a team at school and in clubs, or in activities out of school. Some people say that they like working on their own. That's fine – it's good to be independent and to focus on your work. However, if you work in a team, you might find that it's fun to take part. You might learn a lot!

My personal Statement

My name is Noha and I'm in Grade 6. I work hard and I'm confident – I'm happy to share my ideas in front of the class. I enjoy working in a team, and I like working independently, too. I enjoy taking part in group activities. I enjoy studying history and math. I go to a science club after school. Next year, I would like to do more science activities and visit a science museum.

Learn about yourself

Are you a leader or a follower? Followers and leaders are both important for the success of a team. Leaders inspire and guide their followers to achieve a common goal. Followers work to achieve the goals by working under the direction of their leaders. When you work in a team, you find out what you're good at, and what you can help others with.



Review on Unit (8)

Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
afraid	خائف	cookies	كعك	article	مقال
anxious	قلق	advice	نصيحة	experience	خبرة / تجربة
determined	عازم / مصمم	energy	طاقة	confused	مرتبك / متحير
embarrassed	محرج	fun	متعة	unsure	غير متأكد
independent	مستقل	pasta	مكرونة	opinion	رأي
patient	صبور	team	فريق	leader	قائد
store	متجر	extra	إضافي	follower	تابع
excited	متحمس	event	حدث	success	النجاح
awesome	رائع	competition	مسابقة	successful	ناجح
meal	وجبة	paint	دهان / يدهن	quickly	بسرعة
auntie	عمة / خالة	title	عنوان / لقب	carefully	بعناية / بحرص
flight	الطيران	poster	ملصق	project	مشروع
pleased	مسرور	poem	قصيدة	commands	أوامر
instructions	تعليمات	reason	سبب	personal statement	بيان شخصي
confident	واثق	independently	باستقلال	anyway	على أي حال
scientist	عالم	inventor	مخترع	future goals	أهداف مستقبلية
introduction	مقدمة	interests	اهتمامات	subheading	عنوان فرعي
quiet	هادئ	scary	مخيف	presentation	عرض تقديمي
sneakers	حذاء رياضي	adventure	مغامرة	aquarium	معرض أحياء مائية
compass	بوصلة	backpack	حقيبة ظهر	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
option	اختيار	topic	موضوع	community	مجتمع



The Present Continuous Tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

Form التكوين

Subject + (am / is / are) + (v + ing)

e.g. **I'm walking** to school.

- She **is reading** a book.

Usage الاستخدام

To express an action that is happening now. للتعبير عن حدث يحدث الآن.

e.g. They **are watching** TV **now**.

Listen!	استمع!	today	اليوم	at present	في الوقت الحاضر
Look!	انظر!	now	الآن	at the moment	في هذه اللحظة

e.g. **Listen!** The girl is singing.

We can also use it to talk about arrangements in the future.
يمكننا أيضًا استخدامه للحديث عن الترتيبات في المستقبل.

e.g. **I'm helping** my little brother with his homework tomorrow.

We often use a time phrase to show when this will happen. Time phrases include: غالبًا ما نستخدم عبارة زمنية لإظهار متى سيحدث هذا. تشمل العبارات الزمنية ما يلي:

Later	فيما بعد	this evening	هذا المساء	next week	الأسبوع القادم
next month	الشهر القادم	tomorrow	غدًا	at five o'clock	الساعة الخامسة

e.g. Heba is going on vacation **next week**.

Negative النفي

Subject + (am / is / are) + not + (v + ing)

e.g. I **am not collecting** eggs.

Yes / No question

Is + (he / she / it / a singular noun) + (v + ing)...?

e.g. **Is** he **walking** to school?

- Yes, he is. - No, he isn't.

Are + (we / you / they / a plural noun) + (v + ing)...?

e.g. **Are** they **watching** a TV program?

- Yes, they are. - No, they aren't.

Wh question

Q.W + (is / are) + subject + (v + ing)...?

e.g. **What** is he **doing** now? - He is playing sports.

What are you **doing** at the moment? - I'm studying my lessons.

Reported commands and requests

لتحويل الأمر والطلب إلى كلام غير مباشر نتبع الآتي:

نحول said to إلى told أو asked ثم نضع المفعول.

نستخدم to + inf في الجملة المثبتة.

نستخدم not to + inf في الجملة المنفية.

Subject (الفاعل - المتكلم) + asked / told + object (مفعول) + to + inf / not to + inf

e.g. Mom said to Nada, "Can you pick up the books, please?"

Mom asked Nada to pick up the books.

e.g. My friend said to me, "Don't shout."

My friend told me not to shout.

Dictation on Unit (8)

Lesson (1)

قلق	....	خائف	....
مُحرَج - مرتبك	....	عازم / مصمم	....
صبور	....	مستقل	....

Lesson (2)

متحمس	....	متجر	....
وجبة	....	رائع	....
كعك	....	عمة / خالة	....

Lesson (3)

طاقة	....	نصيحة	....
مكرونة	....	متعة	....
إضافي	....	فريق	....

Lesson (4)

مقال	....	عنوان	....
خبرة / تجربة	....	أنشطة	....
غير متأكد	....	يُنجز - يُحقق	....

Lesson (5)

ملصق	....	طيران	....
مسرور	....	مشروع	....
أوامر	....	قصيدة	....
يبذل قصارى جهده	....	تعليمات	....

Lesson (6)

واثق	....	بيان شخصي	....
على أي حال	....	باستقلال / بشكل مستقل	....
مخترع	....	عالم	....

Lesson (7)

الكشافة	....	تهب / يُطير	....
واحة	....	يمزق	....
قائد	....	مغامرة	....

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Exam on Unit (8)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. When would you like to do more science activities?

....

2. What would you like to visit?

....

3. What would you like to be?

....

4. Who told you to work hard?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

volleyball - works - plays - because - win

I enjoy studying history and math. I love science, too, 1)............................. I want to understand how the world 2)............................. I also like PE. I've played in some important 3)............................. matches this year. My team doesn't always 4)............................., but it's fun anyway!

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

On the bus, the teacher checked everybody's bags. Unfortunately, Asser's bag was too heavy! The teacher told him to take some things out. Seleem and his friends helped Asser make his bag lighter. He kept his lunch, his sweater, and his map. He took out his sneakers, some games, and some potato chips. And he also took out his compass.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The teacher .... everybody's bags.
   a) picked b) packed c) checked d) held
2. The underlined word "Unfortunately" means ....
   a) luckily b) fortunately c) inspired d) unluckily

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What things did Asser keep? ....
4. Did he keep his compass? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 The Reader.

A) Read and write YES or NO.

1. The younger students didn't find the newspaper website. (..................)
2. The team didn't really know how to make videos. (..................)

B) Read and answer the questions.

3. Who came to interview the team? ....
4. What does Tarek do now as an adult? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... Seif's sisters visiting the store now?
   a) Do b) Did c) Are d) Can
2. I'm .... cookies for my friends later.
   a) bake b) baking c) bakes d) baked
3. His mom asked him to .... a break.
   a) have b) has c) had d) having
4. Safia told Seif to .... his book.
   a) opens b) opened c) opening d) open

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. outside - and - play - Dad - me - told - to go - .

....

2. mom - Did - you - ask - to - the dishes - wash - your - ?

....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Personal statement

Guiding elements:

Your favorite subjects / Your interests / Your goals in the future

....

....

....

Exam on Review (4)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who wanted to be clean?

....

2. What were important to them?

....

3. What did they invent?

....

4. Was the ancient Egyptians' toothpaste good?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

robot - machine - watch - as - like

There were lots of great ideas in the class. We wanted to design a 1) .... to store rainwater. Mariam wanted to make a 2) .... that looks 3) .... a duck and cleans rivers. Mariam's idea was as good 4) .... ours, so we both won the prize!

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Yesterday, our teacher asked us a question. Ms Nawal asked, "If you could design an invention to help the environment, what would you make?" She said she would give a prize to the person, or team, with the best idea. She told us to decide if we wanted to work on our own or with other people. I worked in a team with my friends, Sara and Reem. I like working with them. We listen to each other and we all share our ideas. Our friend Mariam said she wanted to work on her own. She's very nice, but she sometimes isn't very patient, so she prefers to do independent work.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Our teacher asked if we could design an ....
   a) invitation b) invention c) decoration d) preparation
2. She would give a .... for the best idea.
   a) prize b) present c) gift d) reward

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does Mariam prefer? ....

4. Why do you like working with Sara and Reem? ....

4 The Reader.

A) Read and write YES or NO.

1. The team could use a phone to film their stories. (.....................)
2. A local teacher came to the school to give a talk. (.....................)

B) Read and answer the questions.

3. Who came to interview the team? ....

4. What does Tarek do now as an adult? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My dad .... me to do my best.
   a) tell b) telling c) told d) hold
2. If I .... a bike, I would make one with solar panels.
   a) designed b) design c) designs d) designing
3. If she took part in the swimming competition, how often she practice?
   a) can b) may c) will d) would
4. He isn't .... chess with me next Monday.
   a) play b) plays c) playing d) played

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. visiting - She - week - her - next - friends - isn't - .

   ....

2. decided - own - She - to - her - on - work - .

   ....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Working in a team

Guiding elements:

(project - competition - independent)



Read the text. What do you think a gratitude journal is? Check (✓) one answer

A gratitude journal is a book where you write about:

1. things that you want to do. ☐
2. things that you are thankful for. ☐
3. places you've visited. ☐

My gratitude journal by Ghazal

مجلة امتناني للكاتبة غزال



Monday

Today was a great day! I met my cousins in the park after school and we had ice cream. It was sunny and the sky was blue. We had fun! They always make me laugh.

يوم الاثنين

اليوم كان يومًا عظيمًا! التقيت بأبناء عمومتي في الحديقة بعد المدرسة وتناولنا الآيس كريم. كان الجو مشمسًا والسماء زرقاء. استمتعنا! انهم دائما يجعلوني أضحك.

Tuesday

Today wasn't as exciting as yesterday. We did a test at school, and I got good marks! That made me happy and surprised because I thought it was difficult.

يوم الثلاثاء

اليوم لم يكن مثيرا مثل الأمس. لقد أجرينا اختبارًا في المدرسة وحصلت على درجات جيدة! لقد جعلني ذلك سعيدًا ومتفاجئًا لأنني كنت أعتقد أن الأمر صعب.

Wednesday

I always love Wednesdays. I have swimming club after school, and I love being in the water. I always feel really happy and relaxed after swimming.

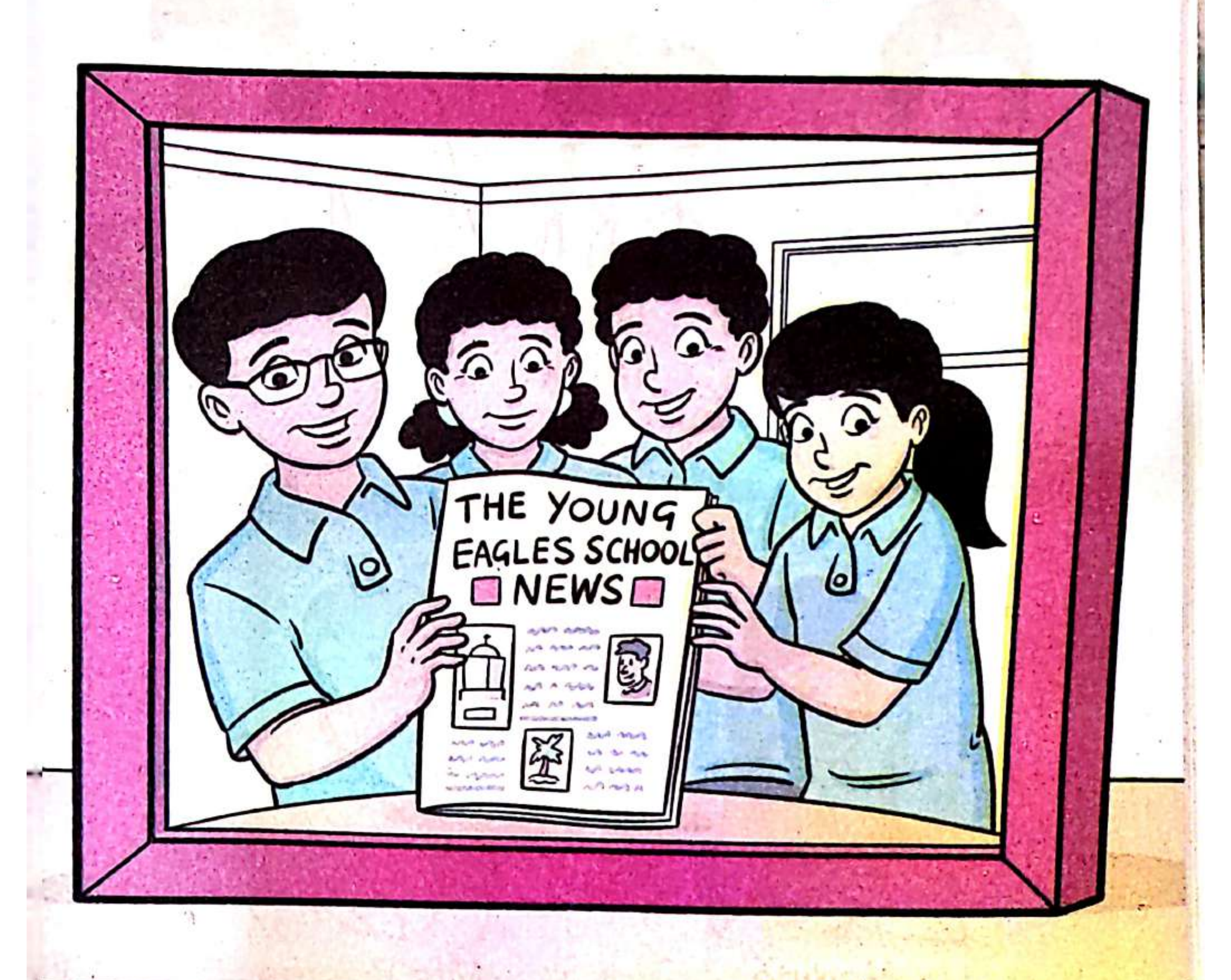
يوم الأربعاء

أنا دائمًا أحب أيام الأربعاء. عندي نادي للسباحة بعد المدرسة، وأحب أن أكون في الماء. أشعر دائمًا بالسعادة والاسترخاء بعد السباحة.

FICTION READER:

NEWS TEAM

فريق الأخبار



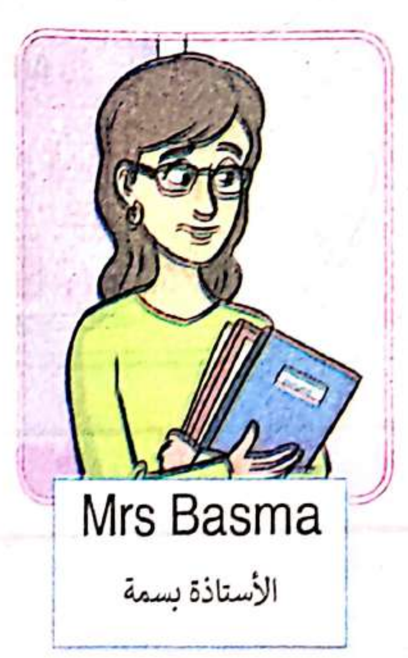
BY NICOLA GARDNER

ILLUSTRATED BY MATT WARD

Characters







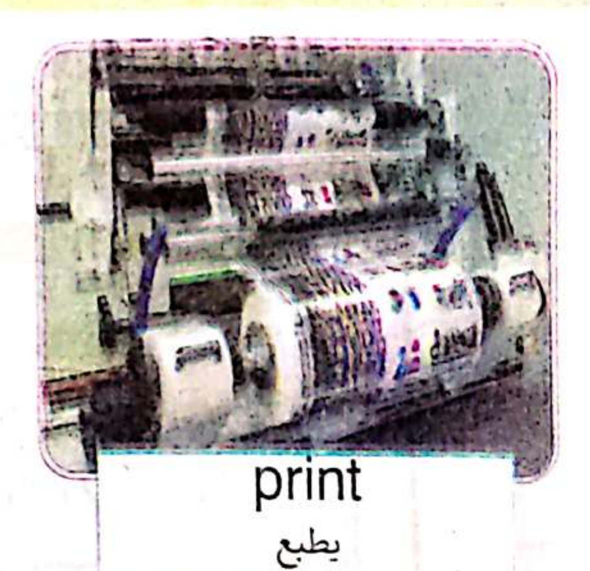
Help your child identify the characters of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على شخصيات القصة

Story

PICTURE DICTIONARY


kitten
قطة صغيرة


print
يطبع


beach clean-up
تنظيف الشاطئ

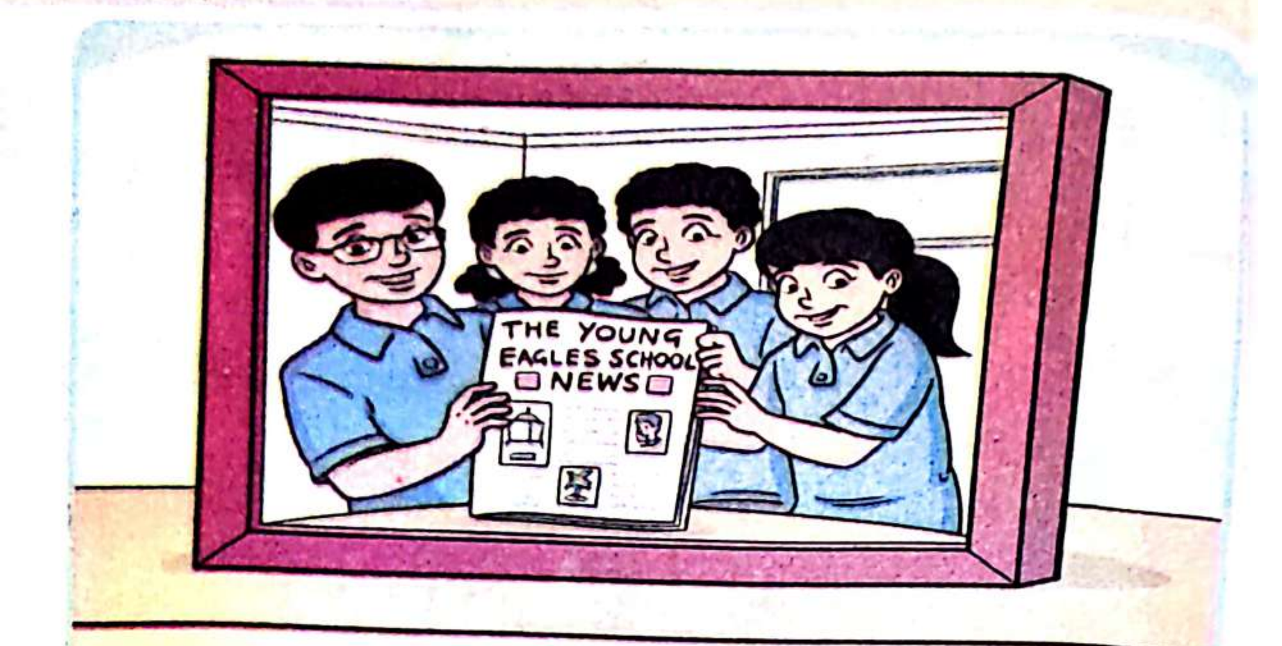

deaf
أصم


enthusiastic
متحمس



flyer
نشرة إعلانية

Part (1) The Beginning



Hatem, Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine are good friends. They often meet to chat about their lives, and their work. They also like to chat about their school days together.

They became friends 15 years ago, at primary school. They all went to Young Eagles Primary School. When they were in Grade 6, they had the idea to produce an English-language newspaper together. In it, they wrote about the latest events in school, and in the local area.

"Why do you want to start a school newspaper?" Hatem's mom asked him.

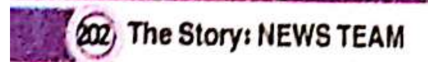
"Well, I think it's important for people to know what's happening around them. Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine all agree," he said.

حاتم وطارق وبسنت ونادين أصدقاء جيدون. غالبًا ما يجتمعون للدردشة حول حياتهم وعملهم. كما أنهم يحبون التحدث عن أيام دراستهم معًا.

لقد أصبحوا أصدقاء منذ ١٥ عامًا في المدرسة الابتدائية. ذهبوا جميعًا إلى مدرسة النسور الصغيرة الابتدائية. عندما كانوا في الصف السادس، خطرت ببالهم فكرة إصدار صحيفة باللغة الإنجليزية معًا. وكتبوا فيها عن آخر الأحداث في المدرسة وفي المنطقة المحلية.

سألت والدة حاتم: "لماذا تريد إنشاء صحيفة مدرسية؟"

قال "حسنًا، أعتقد أنه من المهم للناس أن يعرفوا ما يحدث حولهم. "طارق وبسنت ونادين متفقون جميعًا".



Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

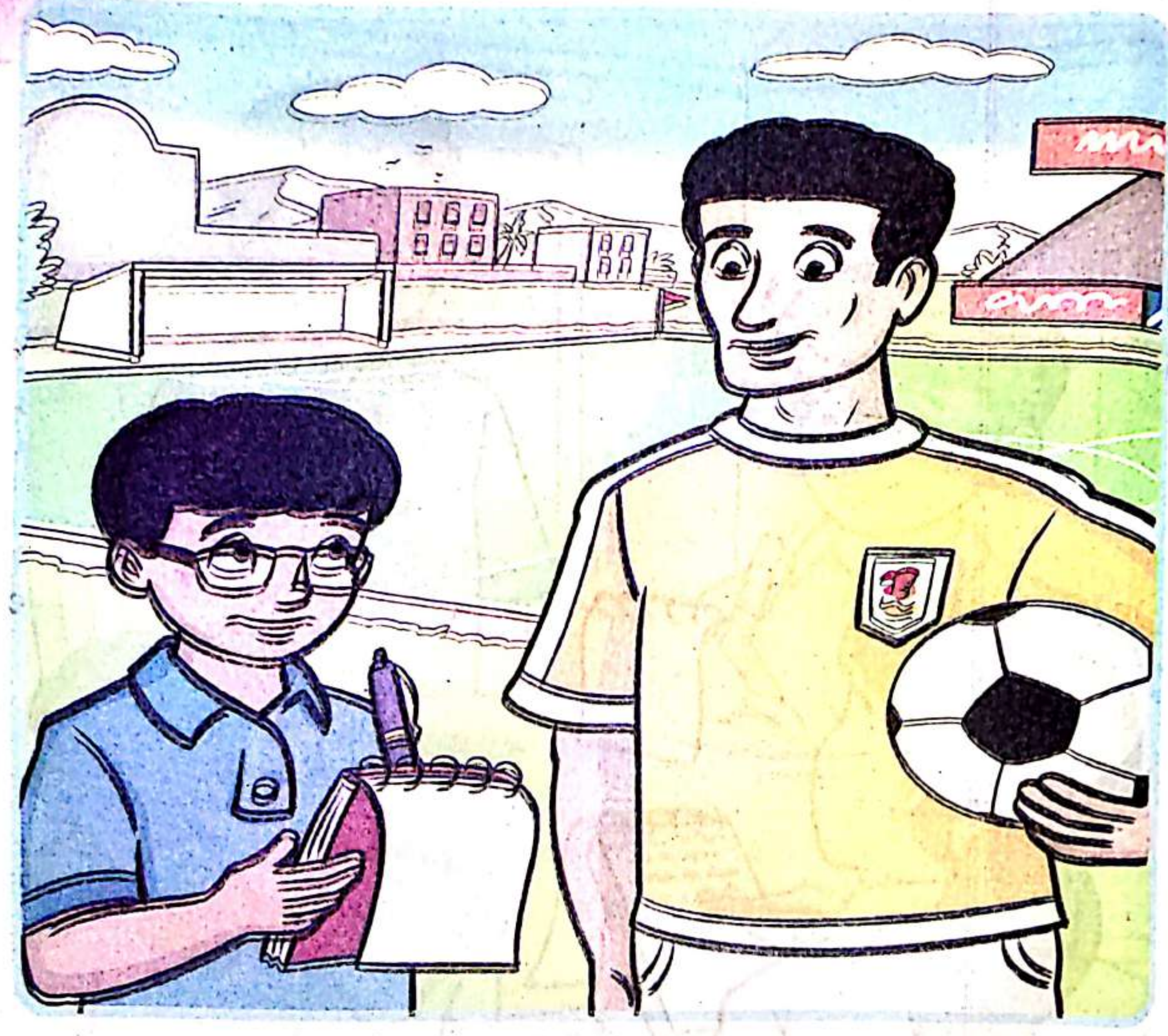


Hatem was the editor. He was a good leader, and great at writing. Every week, he asked his team for interesting news stories. His job was to decide which stories should be their main stories. Hatem read everybody's writing, and checked with the teacher to make sure the English was correct. The team then put the pages together, and printed the newspaper for the school.
"When's the newspaper coming out?" the younger children asked them every week.
"Tomorrow, don't worry!" the newspaper team said.

كان حاتم هو رئيس التحرير. وكان قائداً جيداً وبارعًا في الكتابة. كان يسأل فريقه كل أسبوع عن قصص إخبارية مثيرة للاهتمام. كانت وظيفته هي تحديد الأخبار التي يجب أن تكون أخبارهم الرئيسية. كان حاتم يقرأ كتابات الجميع، ويراجع مع المعلم للتأكد من صحة اللغة الإنجليزية. ثم يقوم الفريق بتجميع الصفحات وطباعة الصحيفة للمدرسة.

كان الأطفال الأصغر سنًا يسألونهم كل أسبوع: "متى ستصدر الجريدة؟" وكان فريق الصحيفة يجيبون قائلين: "غدًا. لا تقلقوا."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Tarek knew a lot about sports, so he was the sports journalist in the team. He went to the PE teacher every week, and asked, “What’s happening in sports this week, please?” Tarek reported on the sports games so everybody at school could read about their successes. He also went to the school sports day, and talked to the school’s football, volleyball, and basketball teams.

“It’s good to have Tarek on the school newspaper,” said the PE teacher. “He helps everybody in school take an interest in sport.”

كان طارق يعرف الكثير عن الرياضة، لذلك كان الصحفي الرياضي في الفريق. كان يذهب إلى مدرس التربية البدنية كل أسبوع، ويسأله: "من فضلك، ماذا يحدث في الرياضة هذا الأسبوع؟" كان طارق يكتب تقارير عن الألعاب الرياضية حتى يتمكن كل فرد في المدرسة من القراءة عن نجاحاتهم. كما كان يحضر أيضًا اليوم الرياضي المدرسي، ويتحدث إلى فرق المدرسة لكرة القدم والكرة الطائرة وكرة السلة.

قال مدرس التربية البدنية: "من الجيد أن يكون طارق في صحيفة المدرسة. إنه يساعد الجميع في المدرسة على الاهتمام بالرياضة."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



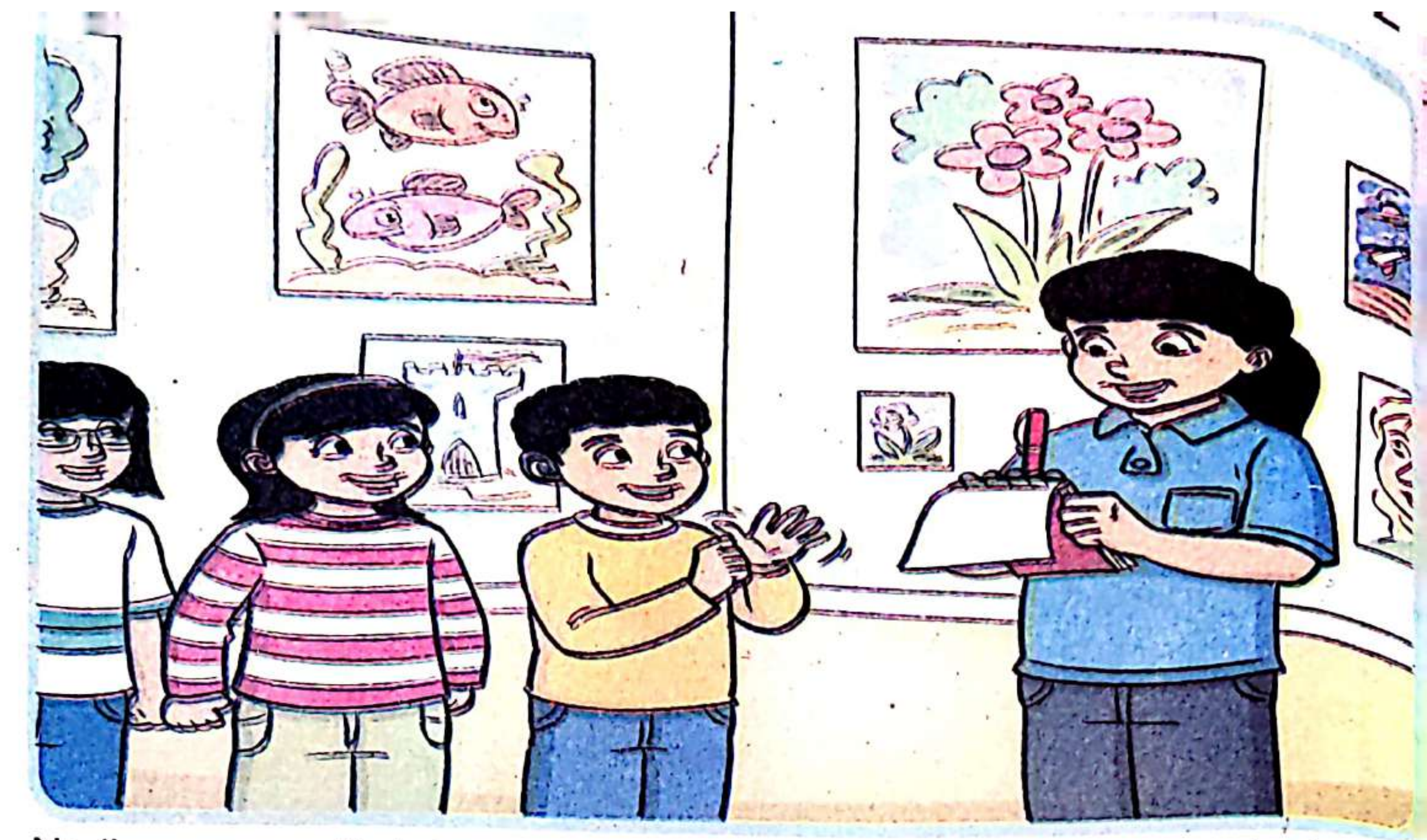
Bassant loved science and the environment, so she often went to **science fairs**. She found out who was doing interesting experiments. Bassant encouraged the younger children to recycle the school trash, and motivated them to think about how they could help their environment. Once, Bassant went on a school trip with her class to the beach. They looked at the effects of climate change there. Bassant and the other children also noticed plastic, and other trash, on the beach.

"This is awful. We need to protect our waters and the wildlife there," said Bassant. She thought a lot about the trash on the beach. After the trip, she organized a beach clean-up. It really helped, and the beach was clean again!

كانت بسنت تحب العلوم والبيئة، لذلك كانت تذهب في كثير من الأحيان إلى المعارض العلمية. اكتشفت من كان يقوم بتجارب مثيرة للاهتمام. شجعت بسنت الأطفال الصغار على إعادة تدوير النفايات المدرسية، وحفزتهم على التفكير في كيفية مساعدة بيئتهم. ذات مرة، ذهبت بسنت في رحلة مدرسية مع فصلها إلى الشاطئ. نظروا إلى آثار تغير المناخ هناك. لاحظت بسنت والأطفال الآخرون أيضًا وجود بلاستيك وقمامة أخرى على الشاطئ. قالت بسنت: "هذا فظيع. نحن بحاجة إلى حماية مياهنا والحياة البرية فيها". لقد فكرت كثيرًا في القمامة على الشاطئ. وبعد الرحلة، قامت بتنظيم حملة تنظيف للشاطئ. لقد ساعد ذلك حقًا، وأصبح الشاطئ نظيفًا مرة أخرى!

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Nadine was really interested in art, so she spent a lot of time in the art studio in school, and doing paintings and pottery outside of school. Her mom was an artist and taught her a lot about different ways of painting and making art. Nadine reported on art competitions in school. A friend of Nadine's went to the local deaf club, and she invited Nadine to an art exhibition there. The exhibition was called "Art is for everybody!" and was very popular. Nadine wrote a report all about it for the school newspaper. Nadine was the newspaper team's photographer, too. Her mom gave her a camera for her eleventh birthday, and showed her how to use it. When there was a news story, Tarek, Hatem, or Bassant called for Nadine, their photographer!

كانت نادين مهتمة حقًا بالفن، لذلك كانت تقضى الكثير من الوقت في الاستوديو الفني بالمدرسة، وكانت ترسم اللوحات والأواني الفخارية خارج المدرسة. كانت والدتها فنانة وعلمتها الكثير عن الطرق المختلفة للرسم وصناعة الفن. قدمت نادين تقريراً عن المسابقات الفنية في المدرسة. ذهبت إحدى صديقات نادين إلى نادي الصم المحلي، ودعت نادين إلى معرض فني هناك. كان المعرض بعنوان "الفن للجميع!" وكان يحظى بشعبية كبيرة. كتبت نادين تقريرًا عن ذلك لصحيفة المدرسة.

كانت نادين مصورة فريق الصحيفة أيضًا. أعطتها والدتها كاميرا في عيد ميلادها الحادي عشر، وعلمتها كيفية ستخدامها. عندما يكون هناك خبر، كان طارق أو حاتم أو بسنت يقومون بالاتصال بمصورتهم نادين!

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

Activities

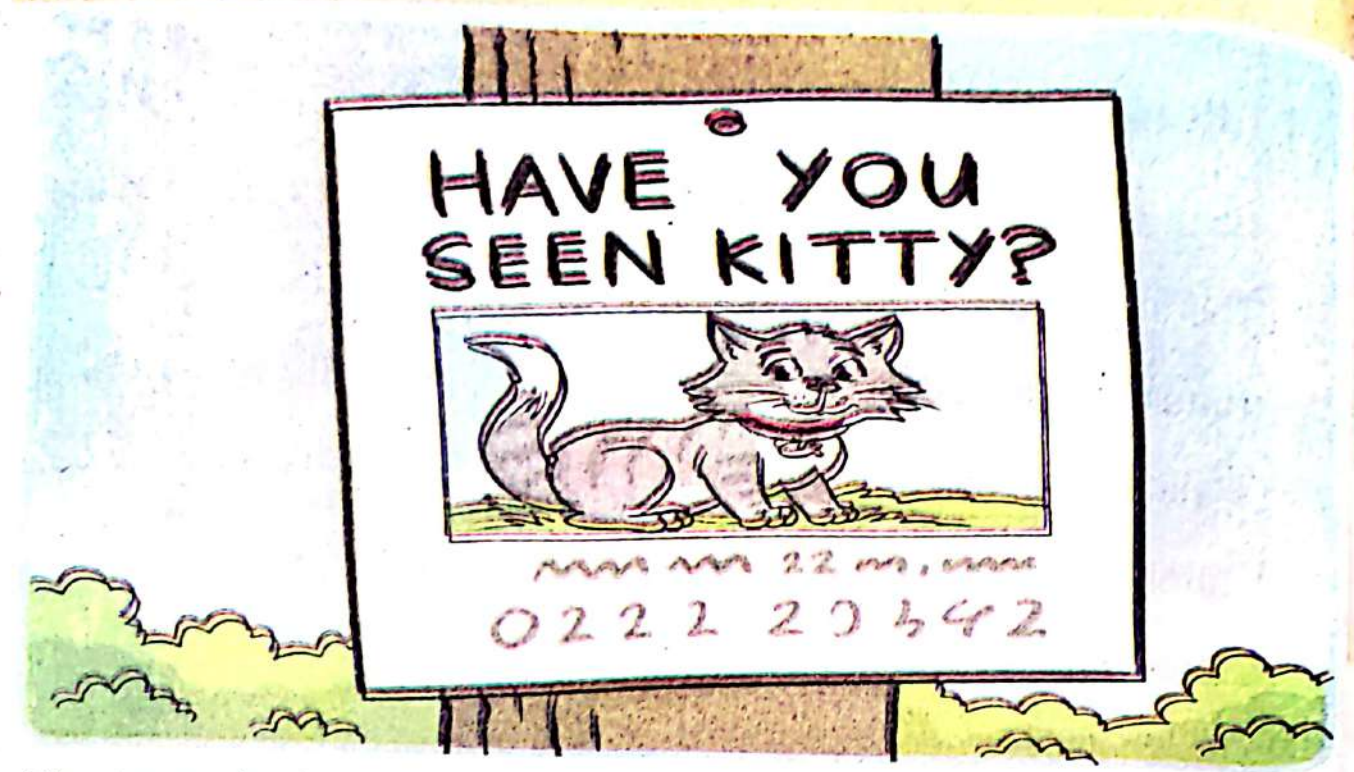
1 Read and write YES or NO.

1. Hatem, Tarek, Basant and Nadine are good friends. (..............................)
2. The friends all went to a preparatory school. (..............................)
3. Hatem was the editor. (..............................)
4. Hatem checked everybody's writing with the doctor. (..............................)
5. Tarek was the sports journalist in the team. (..............................)
6. Tarek reported on the sports games. (..............................)
7. Bassant loves geography. (..............................)
8. Bassant went on a school trip to the club. (..............................)
9. Nadine was really interested in art. (..............................)
10. The exhibition was called "Sport is for everybody" (..............................)

2 Read and answer the questions.

1. When did the friends have the idea to produce a newspaper? ....
2. What do the friends often chat about? ....
3. Who is the editor of the newspaper? ....
4. Why did Hatem read everybody's writing with the teacher? ....
5. Who was the sports journalist in the team? ....
6. What did Bassant and the children notice on the beach? ....
7. What did Bassant organize? ....
8. What was Nadine interested in? ....

Part (2) The Middle



The team also helped people in the community. For example, a family who lived near the school was sad because their cat, Kitty, was lost. They couldn't find her and were very worried.

The newspaper team made a **flyer** about Kitty, with a photo of her, and a contact phone number. They printed it and made copies. After school, the team went to houses in the area and put flyers in front of the doors. Finally, after three days, a local man rang the newspaper team. He said that he found a cat that matched Kitty's features.

"I think it's Kitty!" he said. Kitty was found.

"Thank you so much!" the family said to the man, and the team, when they had Kitty back home."You were a great help!"

كما ساعد الفريق الناس في المجتمع. على سبيل المثال، كانت العائلة التي تعيش بالقرب من المدرسة حزينة بسبب
ـقدان قطتها كيتي. لم يتمكنوا من العثور عليها وكانوا قلقين للغاية.

ـام فريق الصحيفة بإعداد نشرة عن كيتي تحتوي على صورة لها ورقم هاتف للاتصال بهم. لقد طبعوها وعملوا نسخًا
ـنها. بعد انتهاء اليوم الدراسي، توجه الفريق إلى المنازل في المنطقة وقاموا بوضع منشورات أمام الأبواب. وأخيرًا، بعد
ـلاثة أيام، اتصل رجل من السكان المحليين بفريق الصحيفة. قال إنه وجد قطة تطابق ملامح كيتي.

ـل: "أعتقد أنها كيتي!" تم العثور على كيتي.

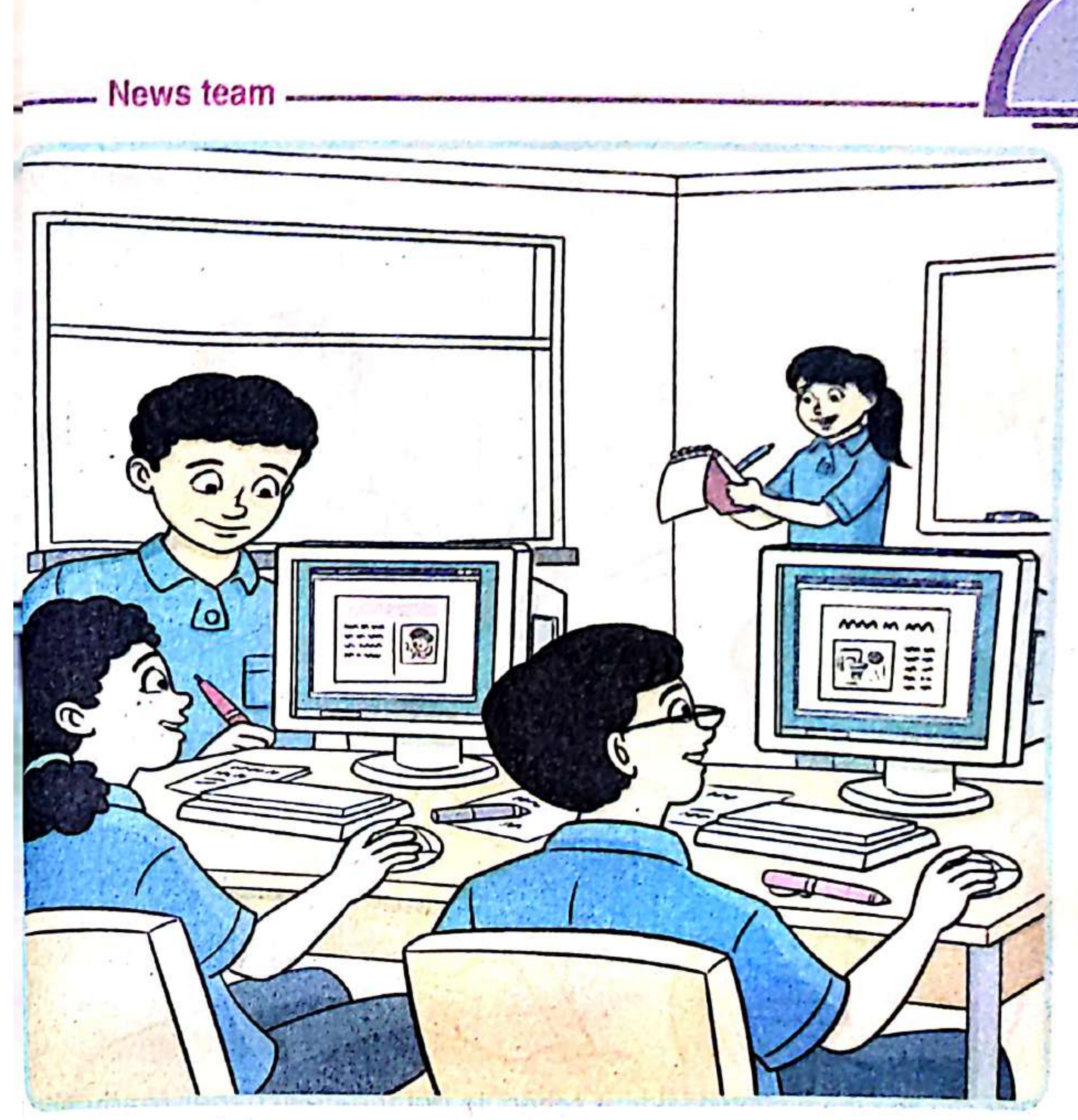
ـلت العائلة للرجل وللفريق عندما أعادوا كيتي إلى المنزل: " شكراً جزيلاً! لقد كنتم عونًا كبيرًا!"



Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ـاعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

News team

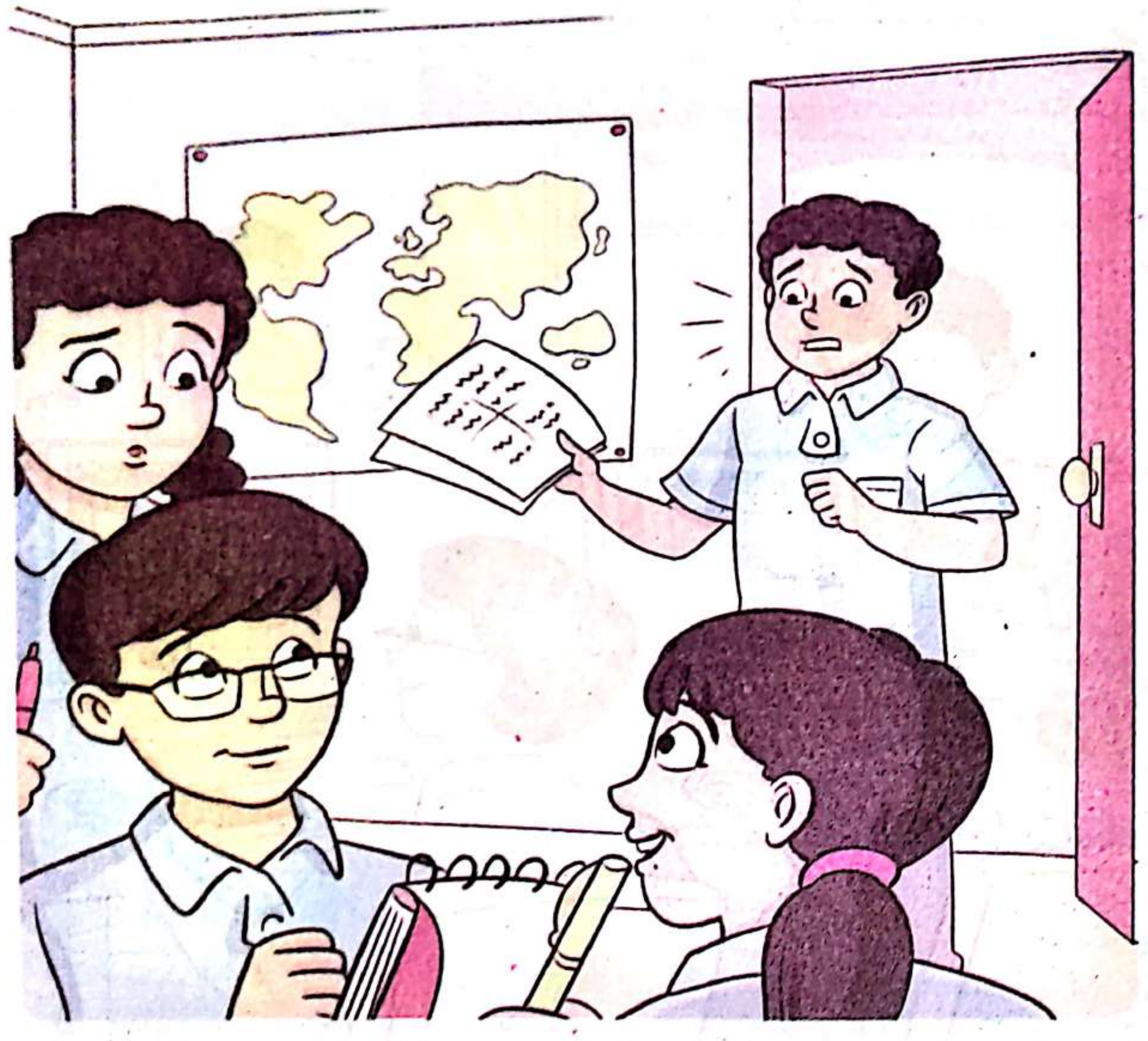


Sometimes, the newspaper team had problems to solve. One week in October, the team were getting the newspaper ready to print, as usual. They were very excited because they had some great stories. The school volleyball team was in the finals of the National Volleyball Games, and Tarek was writing a news report about it. Bassant was writing a report about an important local scientist who came to the school to give a talk. Nadine was writing about a new photography exhibition in town.

في بعض الأحيان، كان يواجه فريق الصحيفة مشاكل يجب حلها. في أحد أسابيع شهر أكتوبر، كان الفريق يقوم بتجهيز الصحيفة للطباعة، كالعادة. لقد كانوا متحمسين للغاية لأن لديهم بعض الأخبار الرائعة. وصل فريق الكرة الطائرة المدرسية إلى نهائيات بطولة الألعاب الوطنية للكرة الطائرة، وكان طارق يكتب تقريرًا إخباريًا عنه. كانت بسنت تكتب تقريرًا عن عالِم محلي مهم جاء إلى المدرسة لإلقاء محاضرة. كانت نادين تكتب عن معرض جديد للتصوير الفوتوغرافي في المدينة.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



That day, the team stayed later at school to get the newspaper ready and printed. Nadine had all her photos ready, too.

Suddenly, Hatem went to check the paper for printing.

"Oh no!" he said. "We don't have enough paper!"

"I know! What about Mr Medhat? Can't we ask him for more paper?" said Bassant.

"No, he's away on holiday," said Tarek.

في ذلك اليوم، بقي الفريق لوقت متأخر في المدرسة لتجهيز الصحيفة وطباعتها. كانت نادين قد جهزت جميع صورها أيضًا.

وفجأة ذهب حاتم للتأكد من ورق الطباعة.

قال: "أوه لا! ليس لدينا ما يكفي من الورق!"

قال بسنت: "أنا أعرف! وماذا عن السيد مدحت؟ ألا يمكننا أن نطلب منه المزيد من الورق؟"

قال طارق: «لا، إنه مسافر في إجازة».

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



"What shall we do? I'm really worried," said Bassant.

"I know. I'm worried, too," said Tarek.

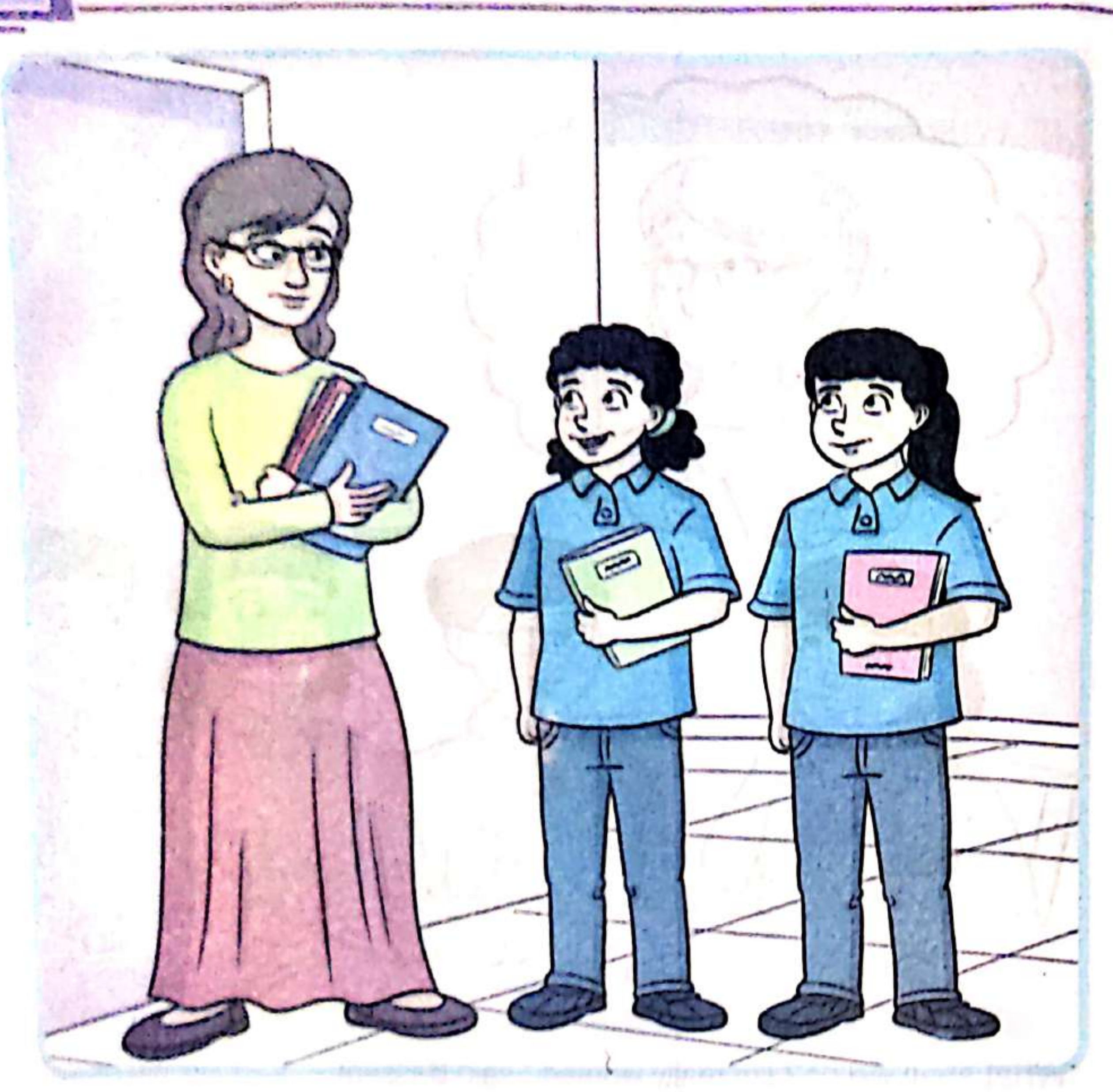
"I have an idea!" said Nadine. "On social media, people don't always w... a lot of words, they use videos to tell stories. Why don't we make v... our news stories?"

Hatem said, "That's a good idea."

"Let's go and talk to Mrs Basma to see if that's OK," said Nadine.

- ...نت: " ماذا سنفعل. أنا قلقة حقًا".
- طارق: "أنا أعرف. أنا قلق أيضًا".
- نادين: "لدي فكرة! على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي، لا يكتب الأشخاص دائمًا الكثير من الكلمات، بل يستخدمون ... الفيديو لسرد القصص. لماذا لا نصنع مقاطع فيديو لقصصنا الإخبارية؟"
- حاتم: "فكرة جيدة."
- ...ادين: "دعونا نذهب ونتحدث مع الأستاذة بسمة لنرى إذا كان الأمر على ما يرام".

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Bassant and Nadine found Mrs Basma.

"Excuse me, Mrs Basma, we have a problem with printing our newspaper," said Bassant. "Can we use a phone to film our stories?"

Mrs Basma was **enthusiastic**. "I think that's a great idea," she said, "and it will make it easier for the children who find it difficult to read to follow the stories, too."

The girls went back to tell the boys – they were very excited.

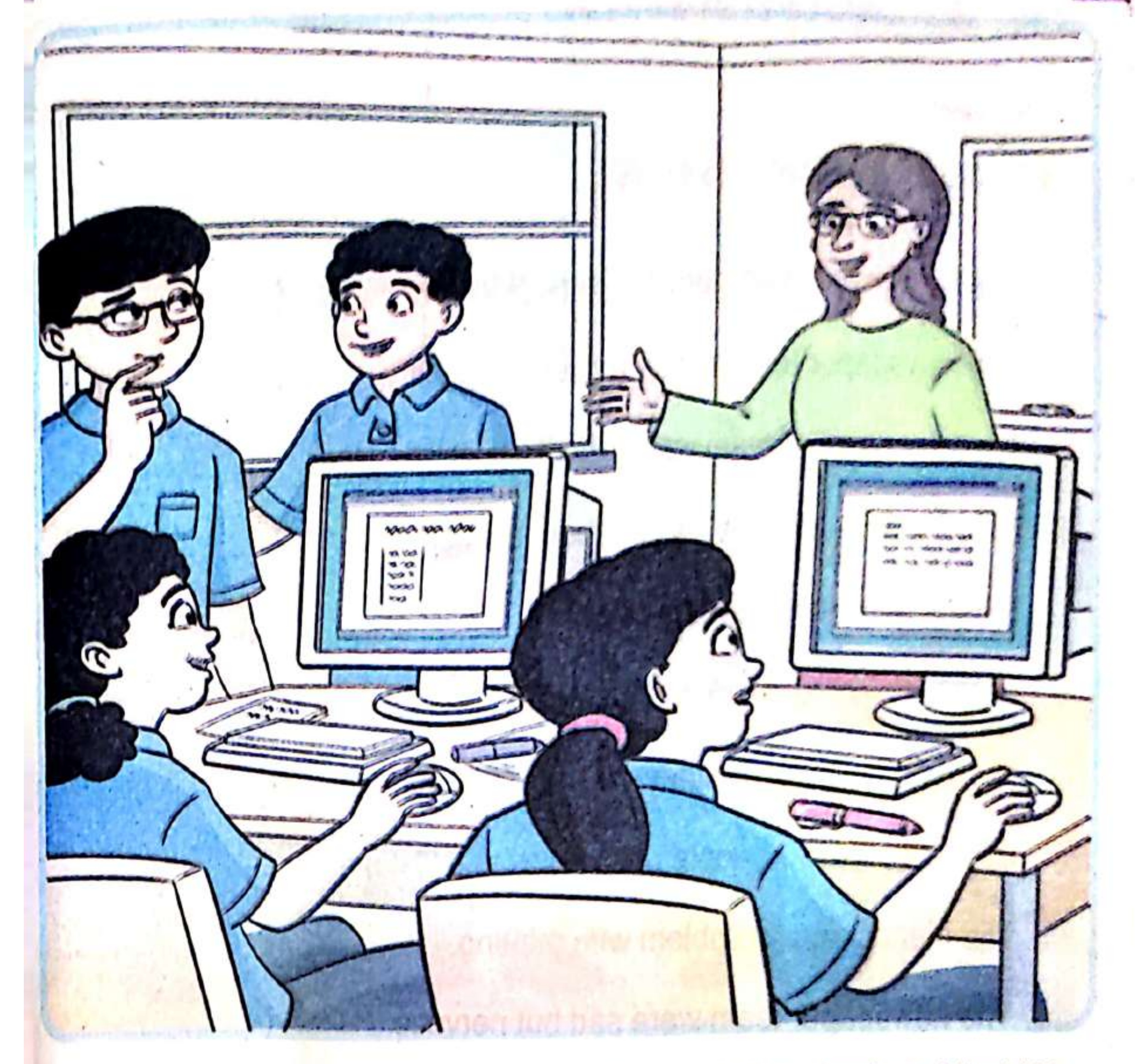
وجدت بسنت ونادين الأستاذة بسمة.

قالت بسنت: "عذراً يا أستاذة بسمة، لدينا مشكلة في طباعة صحيفتنا. هل يمكننا استخدام الهاتف لتصوير أخبارنا؟"

كانت الأستاذة بسمة متحمسة. وقالت: "أعتقد أن هذه فكرة رائعة، وستسهل على الأطفال الذين يجدون صعوبة في القراءة متابعة الأخبار أيضًا".

عادت الفتيات ليخبرن الأولاد – لقد كانوا متحمسين للغاية.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Mrs Basma came to talk to the team. She said, "I've had an idea! Wh
don't you put your written stories and your videos on the school
too? Let me know when the videos are ready in the morning, and I'll
you how to do that."
The newspaper team were very happy, but nervous, too. "We don't
know how to make videos," said Tarek.
"Well," said Hatem, "everybody knows this is the first time we're
videos – they will understand."

ـاءت الأستاذة بسمة للتحدث مع الفريق. وقالت: "عندي فكرة! لماذا لا تضعون أخباركم المكتوبة ومقاطع الفيديو على موقع المدرسة أيضًا؟ أعلموني عندما تكون مقاطع الفيديو جاهزة في الصباح، وسأوضح لكم كيفية القيام بذلك."

كان فريق الصحيفة سعيدًا جدًا، ولكنه متوتر أيضًا. قال طارق: "لا نعرف حقًا كيف نصنع مقاطع فيديو."

قال حاتم: "حسنًا، الجميع يعلم أن هذه هي المرة الأولى التي نستخدم فيها مقاطع الفيديو، وسوف يفهمون ذلك."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



1 Read and write YES or NO.

1. The family who lived near the school lost their dog. (..............................)
2. The newspaper team made a flyer about kitty. (..............................)
3. The school football team was in the finals of the games. (..............................)
4. Bassant was writing a report about a scientist. (..............................)
5. Nadine had all her photos ready. (..............................)
6. Bassant went to check the paper for printing. (..............................)
7. Mr Medhat was on holiday. (..............................)
8. On social media, people use videos to tell stories. (..............................)
9. The friends had a problem with printing. (..............................)
10. The newspaper team were sad but nervous. (..............................)

2 Read and answer the questions.

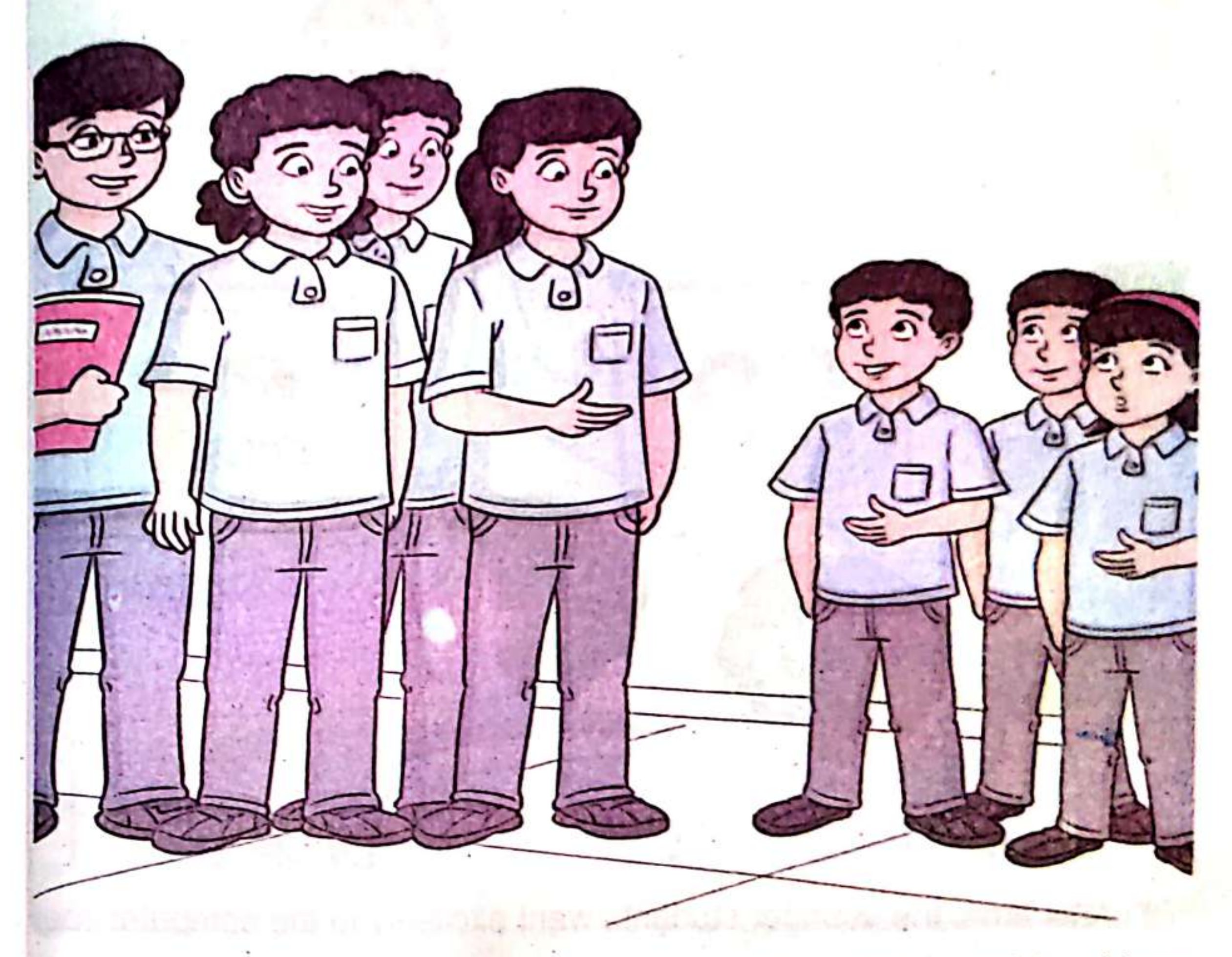
1. Who did Nadine and Bassant find? ....
2. What was Bassant writing a report about? ....
3. Why was the family sad? ....
4. Who was writing about the school volleyball team? ....
5. What was the problem the team faced? ....
6. Who was away on holiday? ....
7. What was Mrs Basma's idea? ....
8. How was Mrs Basma when Bassant and Nadine talked to her? ....



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Part (3) The End



In the morning, Mrs Basma helped them to put the articles and the videos on the school website. The younger students came to school and started looking around.

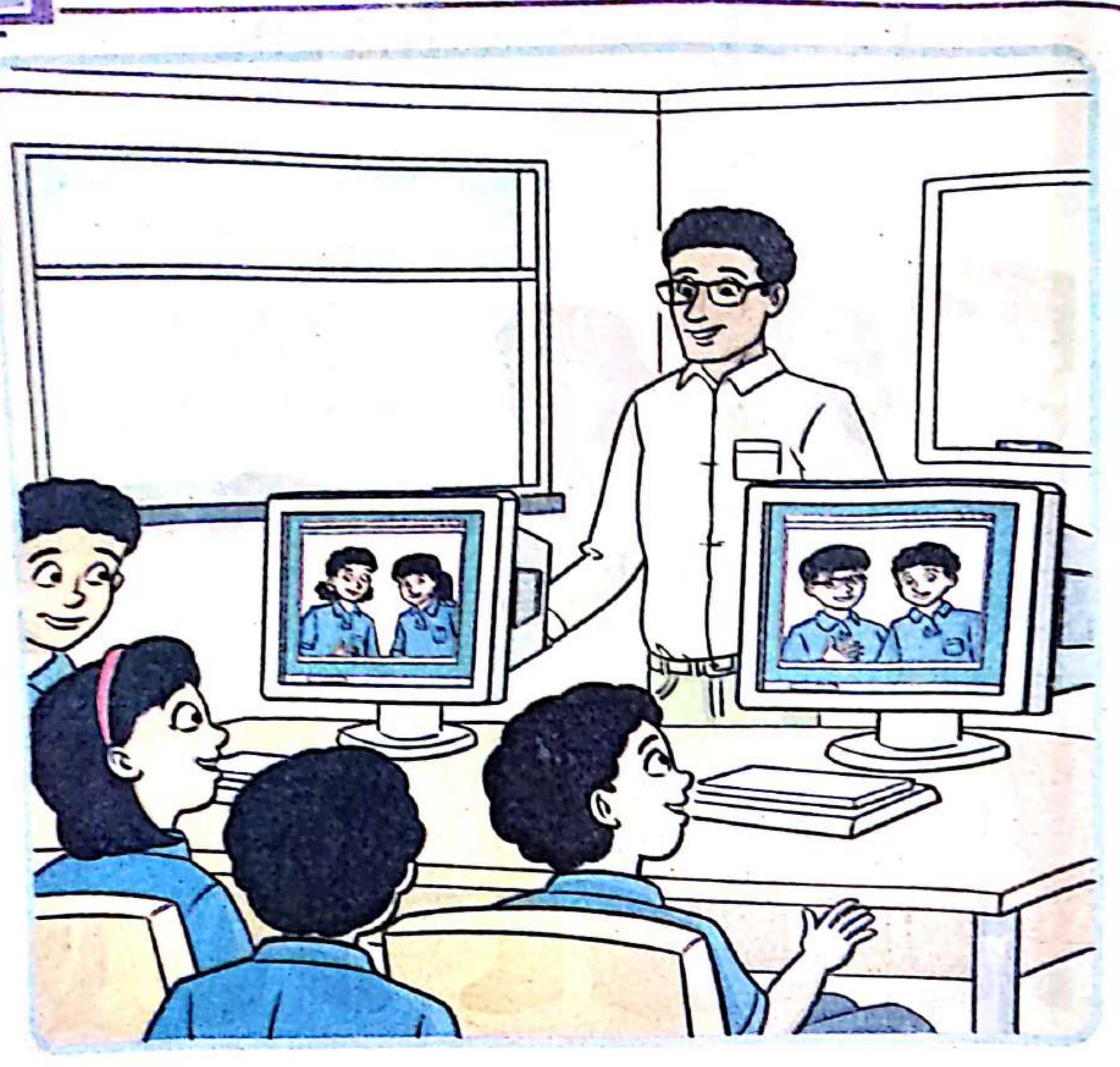
"Hi," they said. "Where is the newspaper, please? We'd like to read that article about our class." They looked a bit worried, but the newspaper team made them feel better.

"Just go to the school website," said Nadine. "All the stories are there."

وفي الصباح، ساعدتهم الأستاذة بسمة في وضع المقالات ومقاطع الفيديو على موقع المدرسة. جاء الطلاب الأصغر سنًا إلى المدرسة وبدأوا في التجول.

قالوا: "مرحبًا، أين الصحيفة من فضلكم؟ نود أن نقرأ هذا المقال عن فصلنا." لقد بدوا قلقين بعض الشيء، لكن فريق الصحيفة طمأنهم.

قالت نادين: "فقط ادخلوا إلى موقع المدرسة كل الأخبار موجودة هناك."



At break time, the younger students went excitedly to the computer room and turned on the computers. They found the newspaper website quickly.

"The videos are a bit unclear!" said one student.

"And I can't hear their voices very well," said another.

"Just be kind," said their teacher. "This is the first time they've made videos. It will get easier for them. They wrote the stories, too, so you can read the news articles if you want."

وفي وقت الفسحة، ذهب الطلاب الصغار متحمسين إلى غرفة الكمبيوتر وقاموا بتشغيل أجهزة الكمبيوتر. وجدوا موقع الصحيفة بسرعة.

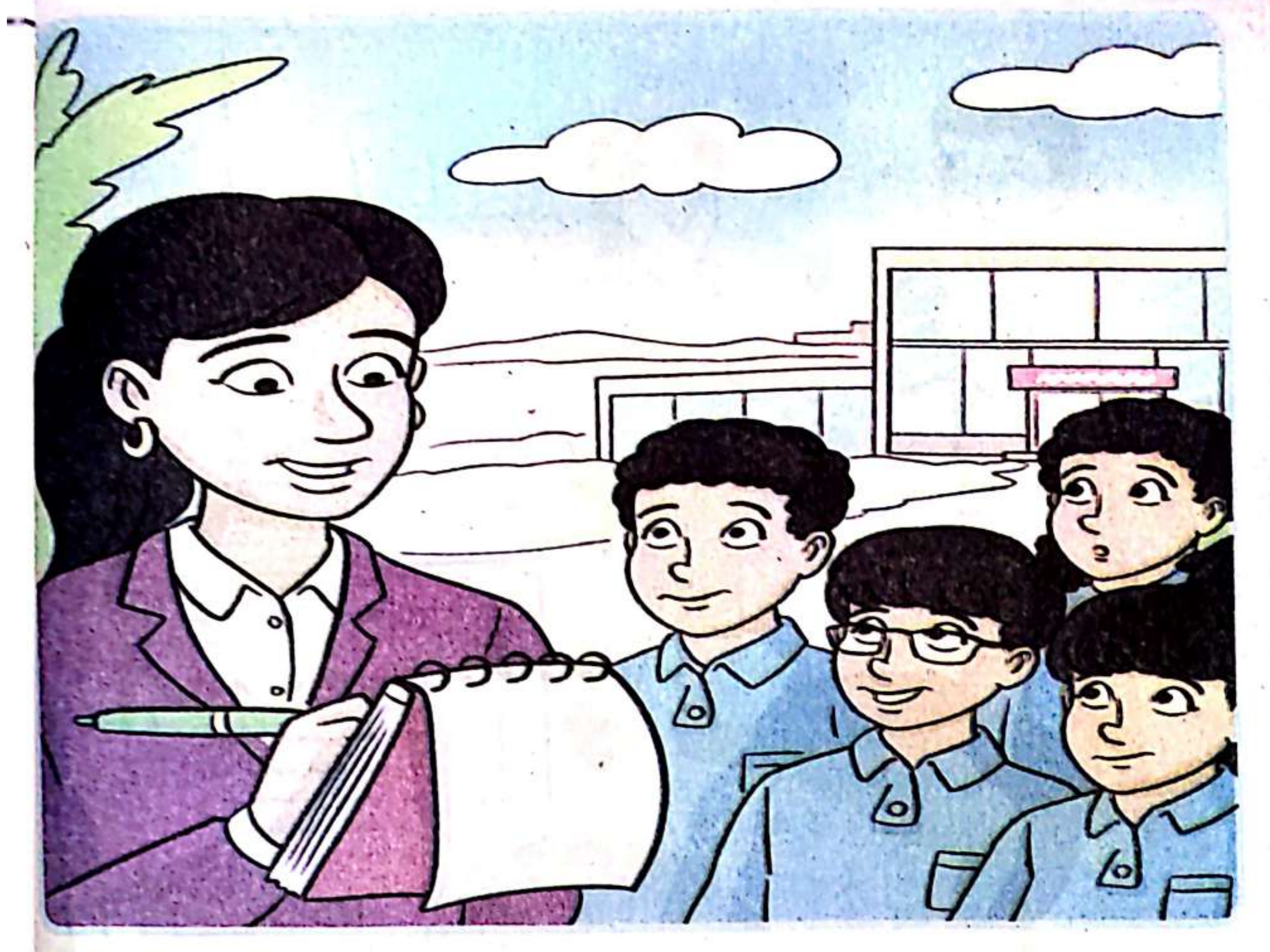
قال أحد الطلاب: "مقاطع الفيديو غير واضحة بعض الشيء!"

وقال آخر: "ولا أستطيع سماع أصواتهم جيداً".

قال معلمهم: "فقط كونوا لطفاء هذه هي المرة الأولى التي يصنعون فيها مقاطع فيديو. سوف يصبح الأمر أسهل بالنسبة لهم. لقد كتبوا الأخبار أيضًا، لذا يمكنكم قراءة المقالات الإخبارية إذا كنتم تريدون ذلك."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Later in the year, it did get easier for the newspaper team. They stopped printing the newspaper. They always did the news reports on video, and wrote their articles for the school website. Everybody at the school loved watching their news reports.

The local newspaper in their town heard about what the children were doing. A reporter came to interview them.

"This is awesome!" said Hatem. "Now someone is reporting on us, and we're the news!"

"Yes," said Nadine. "It's very exciting."

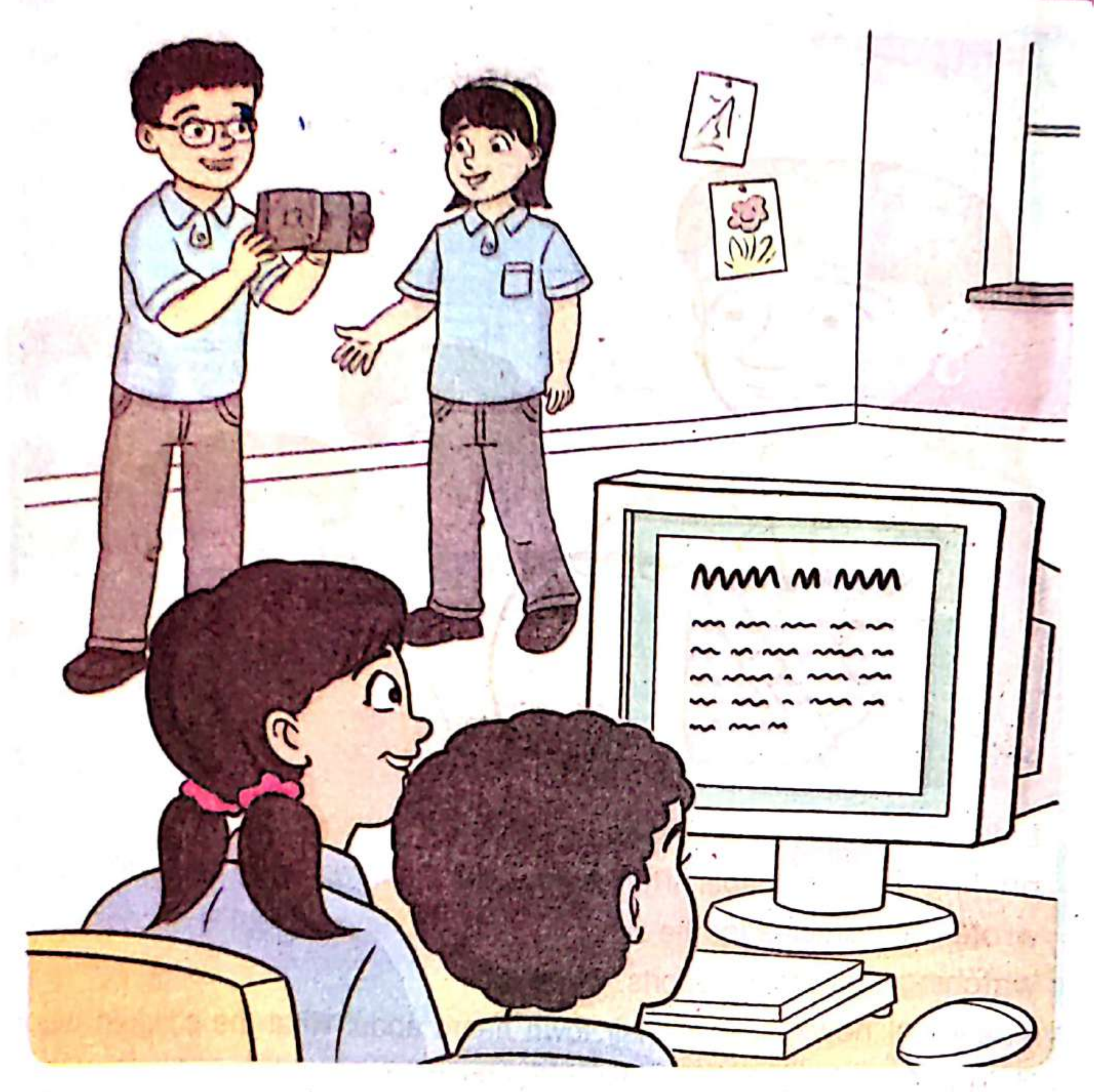
وفي وقت لاحق من العام، أصبح الأمر أسهل بالنسبة لفريق الصحيفة. توقفوا عن طباعة الصحيفة. وانتقلوا إلى إعداد تقارير إخبارية مصورة، وكتبوا مقالاتهم لموقع المدرسة على الإنترنت. أحب الجميع في المدرسة مشاهدة تقاريرهم الإخبارية.

سمعت الصحيفة المحلية في بلدتهم عما يفعله الأطفال.

ـد المراسلين لمقابلتهم.

قال حاتم: "هذا رائع! الآن هناك من يقدم تقارير عنا، ونحن الأخبار!"

قالت نادين: "نعم." "إنه أمر مثير للغاية."

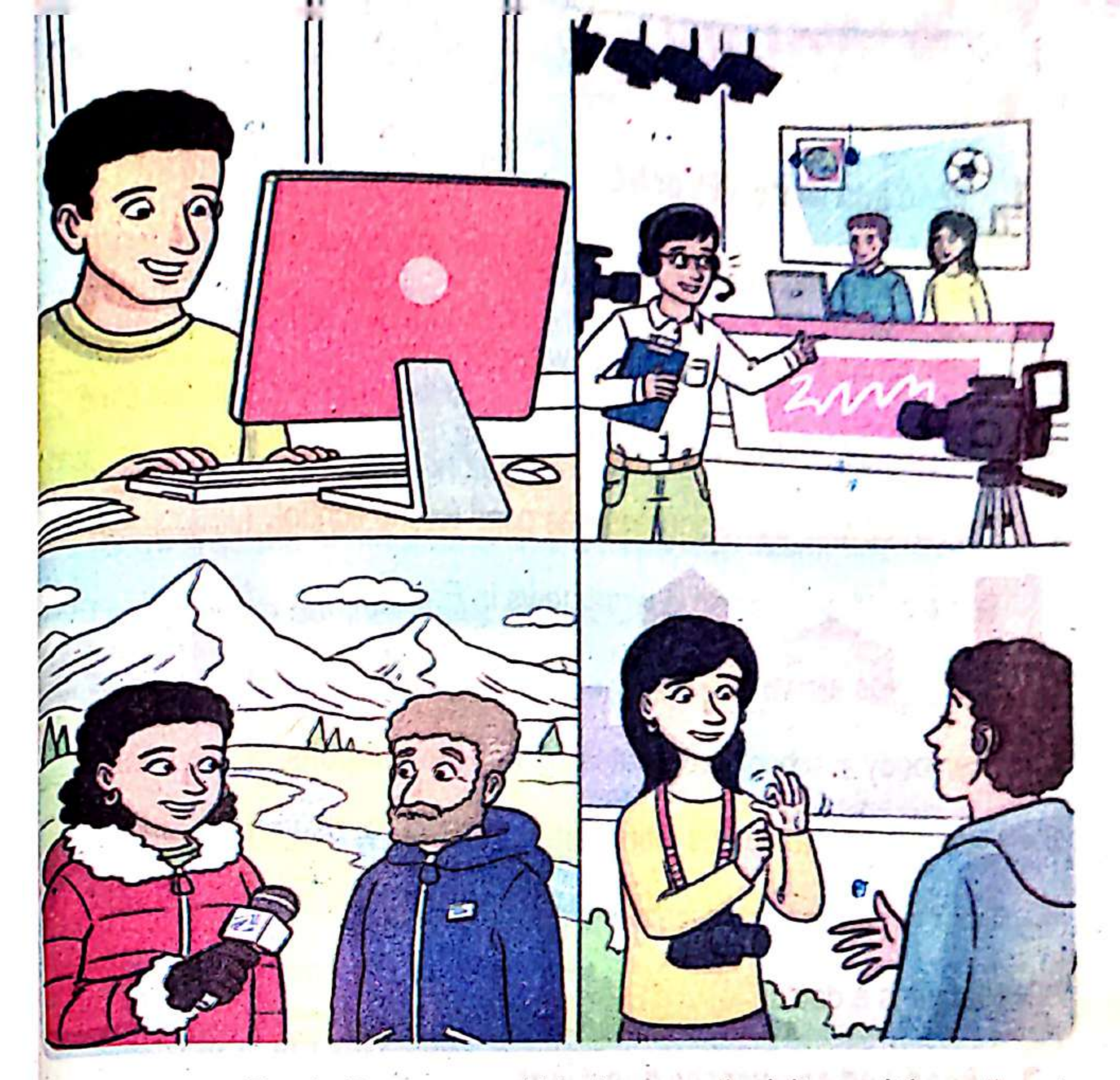


The newspaper team's success was good for the school, too. Many of the younger children became motivated to create something themselves. Some children decided to write news reports in English, and others made videos. This helped them all to communicate better. They became more confident in writing and speaking in English. Some of them thought about a career in television, or at a newspaper, for when they got older.

كان نجاح فريق الصحيفة مفيدًا للمدرسة أيضًا. أصبح العديد من الأطفال الصغار متحمسين لإنشاء شيء ما بأنفسهم. قرر بعض الأطفال كتابة تقارير إخبارية باللغة الإنجليزية، وقام آخرون بتصوير مقاطع فيديو. وقد ساعدهم هذا جميعًا على التواصل بشكل أفضل. وأصبحوا أكثر ثقة في الكتابة والتحدث باللغة الإنجليزية. وفكر بعضهم في العمل في التلفزيون أو في إحدى الصحف عندما يكبرون.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Now, Hatem, Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine are all adults, and they all work in the news.

Hatem is a famous journalist. He writes for the biggest newspaper in Cairo. Tarek loves television, and he now works as a **producer** for a sports program. Bassant works as a science reporter and writes about climate change. Nadine is a photographer who travels around the world, taking photos of important events.

And that shows you how important what we do at school is for our future!

الآن حاتم وطارق وبسنت ونادين كلهم كبار، وجميعهم يعملون في الأخبار.

حاتم صحفي مشهور. يكتب في أكبر صحيفة في القاهرة. طارق يحب التلفاز، ويعمل الآن منتجاً لبرنامج رياضي. تعمل بسنت كمراسل علمي وتكتب عن تغير المناخ. نادين مصورة تسافر حول العالم وتلتقط صوراً للأحداث المهمة.

وهذا يوضح لك مدى أهمية ما نقوم به في المدرسة لمستقبلنا!

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



1 Read and write YES or NO.

1. The younger students came to school. (....................)
2. All the stories are on the school website now. (....................)
3. The younger students went to the library. (....................)
4. The newspaper team's success was good for the school. (....................)
5. Some children decided to write news in French. (....................)
6. The videos are very clear. (....................)
7. Everybody at school loved watching their news reports. (....................)
8. Hatem is now a famous journalist. (....................)
9. Tarek works as a producer for a sports program. (....................)
10. Nadine is a doctor. (....................)

2 Read and answer the questions.

1. How did Mrs Basma help the team? ....
2. How did the younger students look? ....
3. When did the younger students go excitedly to the computer room? ....
4. Was the school team successful? ....
5. What does Hatem write for? ....
6. What is Nadine's job? ....
7. Why weren't the videos good? ....
8. What does Bassant do now? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Activities

1 Read and write YES or NO.

1. Bassant interviewed the newspaper team about their work. (........)
2. Hatem motivated younger children to think about climate change. (........)
3. Mrs Basma was the editor. (........)
4. Nadine was interested in sports. (........)
5. Tarek was the photographer in the newspaper team. (........)
6. The children put their news reports on the school website. (........)
7. The students wanted to start a newspaper to become famous. (........)
8. Tarek reported on the school sports day. (........)
9. The team helped to find a lost dog called Reggie. (........)
10. The first time the team made a news report on video, it wasn't perfect. (........)
11. Hatem is a famous journalist now. (........)
12. The videos are very clear. (........)

2 Read and answer the questions.

1. Who was a good leader? ....
2. Who gave Tarek information about sports at the school? ....
3. What did Bassant organize? ....
4. What did Nadine like to do outside of school? ....
5. Where was the exhibition "Art is for everybody!"? ....
6. What did the local man do when he found Kitty? ....
7. What did the team not have enough of to print the newspaper? ....
8. What was the problem with the team's first video? ....

Listening Texts

Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

Listen and answer the questions.

Ahmed Ibn Majid lived hundreds of years ago. He was born in 1432, in what is now Oman. As a child, he was fascinated by the sea. He loved to listen to stories about sailing from his father and grandfather, who were great sailors.

Lesson (2)

Listen and answer the questions.

Hi! My name's Lucy. When I was 14, I decided to travel around the world and see as many countries as possible. My mom said "yes"! I was so excited! We decided to go to Morocco first. I use a wheelchair, so we had to be very organized, but that wasn't a problem. We filled in the forms to tell the train and plane staff about my disability.

Lesson (4)

Listen and answer the questions.

Omar Hegazy is a very interesting man who is a world-record-holding athlete. He shows that when you work hard, you can achieve amazing things. He is very inspiring, but his life has not always been easy.

Lesson (5)

Listen and answer the questions.

I'd like to be an astronaut. It's a great career, but you need to work very hard to be an astronaut. First of all, you should study science at school and university. After this, you need to do a difficult, two-year astronaut course. If you are chosen to join the next space trip, you are very lucky!

Lesson (6)

Listen and answer the questions.

Alyssa Azar is an amazing young woman, and one of Australia's most ambitious adventurers. She's the youngest Australian to climb Mount Everest. Her dad was a mountaineering guide, so he often took her on trips with him.

Lesson (7)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

The men got up at 5:30 the next day, and walked together through the desert road. They carried backpacks on their backs with water and snacks. The men enjoyed chatting about their lives and their families.

Exam on Unit (5)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

After a while, the friends arrived in an oasis, and saw a beautiful deer with big eyes. When they got closer, the deer ran away, and there was a noise in the leaves. They saw that the deer was back with her baby. It was a beautiful scene.

Unit (6)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

Every year we have a garage sale at our school. This means volunteers from our school all bring in old items like clothes, books, toys, or kitchen equipment. These items are old, but they are still in good shape and can be used again. These items are sold to anyone who would like to buy them. The money we collect is used to help children who need health care in hospitals.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

Cheetahs, the fastest animals in the world, have returned to India. They lived in India until the 1950s, but then slowly disappeared.
However, much later, eight of them were brought to a big park in India – Kuno National Park. The Indian people are very pleased to have these animals back in their country.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

Hi, I'm Sylvia! I'm an international journalist, and I live in Egypt. I work for an English newspaper. People sometimes ask me why I wanted to be a journalist. I really love the English language, so I decided to focus on it at school. After that, I studied journalism at university.

Lesson (5)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

Every year, Nadine went to stay with her aunt, uncle, and cousin, Remas, at their home. It was a peaceful place near a river. She and her cousin always went for walks by the river, and talked to the fishermen there. Last year, when she visited, things were different. When Nadine got to the river, she saw dead fish in the water. It was very quiet there, too.

Lesson (6)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

Our school sports day was last Thursday, 13 June. It was awesome! Mr Kamal's class decorated the sports area – it looked great! The older children in school planned all the races. We think all the parents loved it, too!

Lesson (7)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

Farmer Sameh had a very happy life. He lived on a farm with his wife, Amina, and his children, Monir and Menna. They didn't have a lot of land, but they had enough to grow food to eat and a little to sell at the market. Sameh kept sheep and chickens, and the children helped him look after them. Amina grew fava beans so she could make delicious ful mudamas.

Exam on Unit (6)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

My class has a class rabbit. He's called Crunchy. He lives in a small house called a hutch in the school garden. He loves carrots and lettuce! My class likes looking after him, and this teaches us how to care for pets and be responsible. Our science teacher, Mrs Doaa, is married to a vet. He comes in once a week to check on Crunchy.

Review (3)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

At the age of 25, Omar was a banker. He was doing well at work, and was enjoying his life. Then he had an accident. He went to the hospital, where the doctors removed part of his leg. Then, Omar heard about two disabled athletes, and he wanted to be like them. He started training hard and working on his fitness.

Unit (7)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

I like having takeaway food. I have it with my friends and family. It's great. However, plastic knives, forks, and spoons are bad for the planet. We usually use plastic cutlery once, then throw it away. Plastic doesn't decompose, so it stays in the ground for a long time.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

Mazen, Fares, and Wael were excited because it was the day of the school trip to the science museum. They couldn't wait. They all got on the bus. "OK, children," said Ms Amal, "there's an exhibition about driverless cars at the museum, and we're going to do a school project about it.

Lesson (5)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

We think our modern world is full of exciting new inventions. However, the Ancient Egyptians were as good as modern people at inventing new things. We still use many Ancient Egyptian inventions today. They've existed for thousands of years. That's the sign of a good invention!

Lesson (6)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

We use plastic in our everyday lives: at home, at school, and at work. Plastic can get into the ocean and create lots of problems. It can have a very bad effect on sea life: turtles, fish, and jellyfish, for example. Some animals think the plastic is food, and so they eat it and become sick. Some animals get trapped in the plastic and are hurt.

Lesson (7)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

One morning, Rania was in her yard. She could hear her neighbor, Mr Hamdy. Every morning, he went outside and filled his birdfeeders. Then he sat on a chair to watch the birds.

Exam on Unit (7)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep clean. Clean teeth were important to them, so they invented a type of toothpaste. The Ancient Egyptians mixed salt, flowers, mint, and pepper into a paste. Ancient Egyptian toothpaste was as almost as good as modern toothpaste!

Unit (8)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

Last week, I visited my friend Anas. He was quiet and sad. I tried to make him happy. I told him some jokes but he didn't laugh. So I decided to give him some space and wait for him to tell me the problem.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

My parents are very busy this week, so I'm making dinner this evening. My sisters are going to the store this afternoon to buy the food we need. Then, at five o'clock, I'm cooking my parents' favorite meal. It's hawawshi! It will be a surprise. I really like doing more to help at home.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

To prepare for important events or competitions you should ask for advice. They should be fun to take part. Getting enough sleep will give you more energy. Also being a part of a team is great.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

I love making new friends. When you take part in a new sport, you can easily make new friends. Playing together as a team in a game or a competition is a great experience, and you might make friends for life. You can play football or basketball with your new friends. Playing sports together makes you a good team.

Lesson (5)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

My mom asked me to try my best. "You can't go wrong," she said. You shouldn't forget to have a break! When you're tired, go to bed!

Lesson (6)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

My name is Noha and I'm in Grade 6. I work hard and I'm confident – I'm happy to share my ideas in front of the class. I enjoy working in a team, and I like working independently, too. I enjoy taking part in group activities.

Lesson (7)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

The group couldn't fix the map, so they held the two pieces together. The map was difficult to read, and they weren't sure where to go. Seleem knew they had to go north, so he asked Asser for his compass. Asser looked in his bag, but he didn't have it!

Exam on Unit (8)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

Next year, I would like to do more science activities and visit a science museum. When I'm older, I'd like to be a scientist or an inventor. My science teacher told me to work hard so that I could help people and make lives better.

Exam on Review (4)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep clean. Clean teeth were important to them, so they invented a type of toothpaste. The Ancient Egyptians mixed salt, flowers, mint, and pepper into a paste. Ancient Egyptian toothpaste was s almost as good as modern toothpaste!

AL-BAHER

CONNECT PLUS

Final Revision





Go explore!

Vocabulary

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
astronomy	علم الفلك	peninsula	شبه جزيرة
navigate	يبحر	sailors	بحارة
canoe	قارب - زورق	cooker	بوتجاز
banker	موظف بنك	inspire	يلهم
hold his breath	يحبس أنفاسه	fins	زعانف
model spaceship	مجسم سفينة فضاء	course	منهج دراسي - دورة
cleaning wipes	مناديل مبللة للتنظيف	attached to	مرتبط بـ - ملحق بـ
marathon	ماراثون (سباق)	base camp	المخيم الرئيسي
ambitious	طموح	avalanche	انهيار جليدي
branch	غصن - فرع	realize	يدرك - يلاحظ
sunrise	شروق الشمس	pretend	يتظاهر - يدّعي
fascinated by	منبهر بـ	navigator	ملّاح - بحّار
tent	خيمة	motorbike	دراجة نارية
spacesuit	بدلة فضاء	crutch	عكاز
mission	مهمة	astronaut	رائد فضاء
biography	سيرة ذاتية	crack	صدع - كسر
whisper	يهمس	routes	طرق
geography	جغرافيا	history	تاريخ
inspirational speaker	مُتحدث مُلهم	compass	بوصلة
rock climbing	تسلق الصخور	snorkeling	الغطس بأنبوب التنفس
business person	رجل أعمال	athlete	لاعب رياضي
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك	incredible	لا يصدق
successful	ناجح	break a record	يحطم رقم قياسي
disabilities	إعاقات	career	مهنة



Phrasal verbs

الأفعال الاصطلاحية

A phrasal verb is a verb that is followed by a preposition. The preposition changes the meaning of the verb.

الفعل الاصطلاحي: عبارة عن فعل يليه حرف جر وحرف الجر يغير معنى الفعل.

She saw the picture in the book. (see = notice with your eyes) هنا "see" بمعنى يرى
She saw off her husband before he traveled. (saw off = said goodbye)

هنا "see off" بمعنى يودع

Look at the phrasal verbs again. When phrasal verbs have an object, this affects the word order.

لاحظ: عندما يكون للفعل الاصطلاحي مفعول فهذا يؤثر على ترتيب الجملة.

عندما يكون المفعول اسمًا، يمكن أن يأتي بين الفعل وحرف الجر أو بعد حرف الجر.

e.g. I filled the form in before I left. (the form is the object). الاستمارة هنا مفعول
You can also say: I filled in the form before I left. هنا حرف الجر يتبع الفعل مباشرة
When the object is a pronoun, we follow this word order.

عندما يكون المفعول ضميرًا، فيجب أن يأتي بين الفعل وحرف الجر

I filled it in before I left. (it is the object; it is a pronoun)

لاحظ معاني الأفعال الاصطلاحية الآتية:

fill in	complete	يكمل - يملأ (استمارة)
wake up	stop sleeping	يستيقظ
pick up	learn	يتعلم
see off	say goodbye to somebody leaving	يودع
figure out	discover	يكتشف
put away	put something in its place	يضع الشيء في مكانه
drop off	take somebody to a place	يوصل شخصًا إلى مكان
look up	find out something	يبحث عن - يعرف



Present Simple Passive المبني للمجهول في المضارع البسيط

Active المبني للمعلوم

In active sentences, we focus on the **doer** of the action (the person doing the action). في صيغة المبني للمعلوم، نركز على فاعل الحدث.

e.g. **We** study science at school and university.

Passive المبني للمجهول

In passive sentences, we focus on the **object** (the person/thing receiving the action). في صيغة المبني للمجهول، نركز على المفعول به (سواء كان شخصًا أو شيئًا).

e.g. **Astronauts** are asked to swim three lengths in their spacesuits.

The doer can be included in the sentence, using by, or it can be left out.

يمكن أن يستخدم الفاعل في نهاية الجملة مع كلمة by أو يمكن حذفه.

e.g. The **food** is heated up (by the astronauts).

e.g. **Astronauts' bags** are stored on the spaceship.

Affirmative الإثبات

Object (مفعول) + am / is / are + P.P.

e.g. TV is watched by me.

Negative النفي

Object (مفعول) + am / is / are + not + P.P

e.g. Tennis isn't played by me.

Yes/No question السؤال بـ هل

Am / Is / Are + object (مفعول) + P.P ..?

e.g. Are clothes bought by you?

Wh-question السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q.W + am / is / are + object (مفعول) + P.P ..?

e.g. Where is meat bought?

Activities on Unit (5)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where have you been?

....

2. Where did you sleep?

....

3. How did you travel early in the morning?

....

4. When did you rest?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

tent - sleep - photos - environment - canoe

Emily went to the Amazon because she wanted to learn more about what humans are doing to the 1) .... She learned how to 2) .... She also learned how to take better 3) .... Her biggest challenge was that it was often too hot to 4) ....

- Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

sink - spaceship - stored - chosen - float

During the astronaut course, students are asked to swim in their spacesuits to test their fitness. After the course, some of the students are 1) .... for a space mission. Their clothes are 2) .... on the spaceship and the food is put up in drawers so that it doesn't 3) .... away. Each sleeping bag in the 4) .... is attached to the wall for the same reason.

Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

long - flight - see off - for - since

Belal : Hello, Samir. Where have you been?

Samir : Hello, Belal. I have been to the airport to 1)...... my uncle and aunt. They have flown to Jordan.

Belal : When did the 2)........................ leave?

Samir : It left at 8 am.

Belal : How 3)........................ will they stay there?

Samir : They will stay there 4)........................ 2 years.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Ahmad Ibn Majid was born in 1432, in what is now Oman. Ibn Majid's father and grandfather were great sailors. They sailed the Red Sea and the Indian Ocean before Ibn Majid was born. Ibn Majid went on his first sea journey when he was seven years old. Ibn Majid was a good student. He studied art, math, geography, and astronomy. His studies helped him understand the winds, the monsoons, and the stars. He became a famous navigator and, over the years, he wrote many books. He wrote about routes to different places and the history of sailing. His books helped sailors travel from the Arabian Peninsula to India and East Africa.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The best title of the text is "A famous ....".
   a) actor b) singer c) navigator d) player
2. The opposite of the underlined word "famous" is ....
   a) known b) unknown c) popular d) bad

B) Answer the following questions.

3. When was Ibn Majid born?

....

4. What did Ibn Majid write about?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. Vocabulary

1. In the past, people used maps and compasses to ....
   a) navigate b) cook c) fly d) write
2. Mount Sinai is on the Sinai ....
   a) Island b) Lake c) Sea d) Peninsula
3. If Nadia studies ...., she will learn about the stars and planets.
   a) math b) astronomy c) history d) geography
4. There were more than 35 .... who lived on the ship.
   a) doctors b) teachers c) engineers d) sailors
5. Mrs Amal is .... by the Ancient Egyptians.
   a) focused b) fascinated c) protected d) good
6. Ahmad Ibn Majid was an explorer, a master ...., an author, and a poet.
   a) navigator b) dentist c) artist d) singer
7. She is disabled. She uses a ....
   a) chair b) sofa c) table d) wheelchair
8. We must look after the ....
   a) pen b) ruler c) environment d) internet
9. Omar works in a bank. He is a successful ....
   a) teacher b) baker c) carpenter d) banker
10. Omar .... young people with physical disabilities.
    a) decides b) inspires c) breaks d) removes
11. Omar had an accident and doctors had to .... part of his leg.
    a) remove b) stop c) increase d) break
12. ".................. " are the clothes that astronauts wear in space.
    a) Pants b) Dresses c) Spacesuits d) Spaceships
13. A .... is a program of learning.
    a) race b) rocket c) cure d) course

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. Language

1. The spaceship .... before the mission into space.
   a) prepare b) prepares c) prepared d) is prepared
2. The astronauts .... how to do first aid.
   a) shows b) showing c) are shown d) is shown
3. Astronauts .... for their fitness.
   a) test b) are tested c) tested d) is tested
4. The space flight .... by millions of people.
   a) will watch b) is watching c) watched d) is watched
5. Experiments .... every day by the team.
   a) are done b) doing c) is done d) did
6. The results .... on computers.
   a) records b) are recorded c) are recording d) will record
7. The astronauts' health .... every day.
   a) is checked b) check c) are checking d) checked
8. The astronauts' dirty spacesuits are .... away.
   a) throw b) throwing c) threw d) thrown
9. He saw his friend .... at the train station.
   a) off b) of c) at d) on
10. Could you fill .... this form, please?
    a) in b) on c) with d) up
11. He always .... up his brother in the morning.
    a) figures b) wakes c) puts d) fills
12. My dad .... me off at school every day.
    a) finds b) looks c) drops d) makes
13. I figured .... the problem and could solve it.
    a) out b) at c) with d) in

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. wrote - about - books - of sailing - Ibn Majid - the history - .

....

2. went - the airport - I - to - my cousin - see off - to - .

....

3. did - choose - go on - this - Why - you - to - trip - ?

....

4. across - Omar - the - swam - Aqaba Gulf - eight hours - in - .

....

5. are - how - shown - do - The astronauts - first aid - to - .

....

6. countries - he - did - Which - across - cycle - ?

....

7. a beautiful - her - fox - and - We - baby - saw - .

....

8. was - Omar - by - athletes - inspired - two - disabilities - with - .

....

9. was - with - Little Fish - Where - playing - friend - her - ?

....

10. is - Miss Malak - by - Ancient - fascinated - Egyptians - .

....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Alyssa Azar

Guiding elements:

(Australian - Mount Everest - trained)

....

....

....

Unit (6) Breaking news!

Vocabulary

garage sale	معرض للأشياء المستعملة	journalism	الصحافة
equipment	معدات	journalist	صحفي
responsible	مسؤول	breaking news	أخبار عاجلة
vaccinations	تطعيمات - أمصال	staff	طاقم العمل - هيئة الموظفين
editor	محرر - رئيس تحرير	sociable	شخص اجتماعي
volunteers	متطوعون	peaceful	هادئ / مريح
hutch	قفص "أرنب"	promise	يعد
check on	يفحص - يطمئن على	investigate	يحقق
newspaper	جريدة	tug-of-war	لعبة شد الحبل
cheetah	الفهد الصياد	school science fair	معرض العلوم المدرسي
India	دولة الهند	school talent show	عرض المواهب المدرسي
Indians	الهنود	school bake sale	معرض المخبوزات المدرسية
giant panda	الباندا العملاقة	barn	حظيرة
news	أخبار	fall	فصل الخريف
bamboo	خيزران - البامبو	summer	فصل الصيف
publish	ينشر	press box	مقصورة الصحافة
charity	مؤسسة خيرية	raise money	يجمع تبرعات
international	عالمي - دولي	shade	ظل

Good news phrases عبارات خاصة بالأخبار الجيدة		Bad news phrases عبارات خاصة بالأخبار السيئة	
Oh, wow! That's great!	أوه، واو! هذا رائع!	Oh, no! That's too bad!	أوه لا! هذا سيء للغاية!
That's amazing news!	هذه أخبار مدهشة	Better luck next time.	حظًا أوفر المرة القادمة.
I'm so pleased for you!	أنا مسرور جدًا لأجلك	I'm sorry to hear that!	أنا حزين لسماع ذلك!
Well done!	أحسنت	What a pity!	يا للأسف!



The Past Simple Passive

زمن الماضي البسيط في صيغة المبني للمجهول

Affirmative الإثبات

Object (مفعول) + was / were + P.P.

e.g. Bamboo was eaten by pandas.

Negative النفي

Object (مفعول) + was / were + not + P.P.

e.g. The panda wasn't fed yesterday.

Question السؤال

(Yes / No) question:

Was / Were + object (مفعول) + P.P...?

e.g. Were the videos posted by Ali?

Wh-question:

Q.W + was / were + object (مفعول) + P.P...?

e.g. Where was the giant panda found?

The Future Simple Passive

زمن المستقبل البسيط في صيغة المبني للمجهول

Affirmative الإثبات

Object (مفعول) + will + be + P.P.

e.g. The parcel will be brought tomorrow.

Negative النفي

Object (مفعول) + will + not + be + P.P.

e.g. Her homework won't be finished.

Question السؤال

(Yes / No) question:

Will + object (مفعول) + be + P.P...?

e.g. Will fish be eaten?

Activities on Unit (6)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. When was your school concert?

....

2. How many chairs were put in the school hall?

....

3. What did Mr Amir's class do?

....

4. How was everyone?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

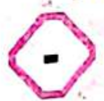
tracked - brought - protected - given - fed

Cheetahs lived in India until the 1950s, but slowly died out. Recently, eight of them were 1)...................... to Kuno National Park. The cheetahs now live in a safe area and they are 2)...................... every day. Also they are 3)...................... so that they don't get lost. Some people are worried they will meet leopards and other big cats, but it's important that cheetahs are 4)...................... now.

- Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

worried - sheep - buy - barn - build

Farmer Sameh lived on a small farm with his family. He kept 1).................... and cows, and his children kept bees for honey. Sameh had an old 2).................... where he kept his sheep. His friends Fareed and Hazem were 3).................... about the old barn. They told Sameh to buy a new one. Sameh couldn't 4).............. a new barn because he needed to buy more sheep.



- Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

That's - Thanks - pity - hurt - ankle

Amira : Hi, Fareeda.

Fareeda : Hi, Amira. Are you OK?

Amira : Not really. I 1) .... my hand when I was playing volleyball.

Fareeda : Oh, no! 2) .... too bad. I'm sorry.

Amira : Now I can't play in the school team next week.

Fareeda : What a 3) .... ! Don't be sad. You will be better soon.

Amira : 4) ...., Fareeda.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My class likes to raise money for local charities. Our teacher, Mrs Mariam, helps us organize a special event called Charity Day every few months. We put tables and chairs in the school hall. Then we decorate the hall with flowers from the school garden. On Charity Day, our parents and people from the community come to buy things. Some children make cakes and lemonade to sell. My friend Fares and his sister Laila make delicious snacks, too. We also bring books and crafts to sell. I like making models, so I make models and I sell them on the day. We give the money we raise to local charities. It's a special day for the community and it's always a lot of fun!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is generally about " .... Day".
   a) Charity b) Mother's c) Teacher's, d) Woman's
2. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to the ....
   a) books b) snacks c) children d) models

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Who comes to "Charity Day" event? ....
4. What do Fares and Laila make to sell? ....



4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. **Vocabulary**

1. Kitchen .... helps us bake things quickly.
   a) chairs b) equipment c) tables d) color
2. The .... protected me from being sick.
   a) vaccination b) cold c) flu d) smoke
3. The .... chose the story I wrote for the school website.
   a) farmer b) vet c) actor d) editor
4. My rabbit lives in a ....
   a) glass b) hutch c) cup d) pencil case
5. Grandma is interested in the news and reads a .... every day.
   a) play b) film c) game d) newspaper
6. Each year, ... bring items for us to sell in our garage sale.
   a) volunteers b) the poor c) the needy d) doctors
7. The park is very .... There is no noise there.
   a) noisy b) busy c) crowded d) peaceful
8. The newspaper reporter was sent to the hotel to .... the fire.
   a) play b) investigate c) read d) write
9. The journalist .... to write an article about the problem.
   a) slept b) said c) promised d) lived
10. The sheep sleep in the .... during winter.
    a) barn b) desert c) tent d) forest
11. When it's hot, we sit in the .... of a tree in our garden.
    a) fruit b) roots c) shade d) leaves
12. The leaves turn orange and yellow during ....
    a) summer b) winter c) spring d) fall
13. It can be too hot to sit outside during ....
    a) winter b) summer c) fall d) spring

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. Language

1. The cheetahs .... brought to India.
   a) was b) were c) is d) am
2. The cheetahs aren't .... all the time.
   a) watch b) watched c) watches d) watching
3. The park is .... to be safe for people.
   a) design b) designs c) designed d) designing
4. A few years ago, the giant pandas .... put in danger.
   a) am b) was c) are d) were
5. The pandas .... put into a safe place now.
   a) am b) was c) are d) were
6. The pandas are .... in their new special areas.
   a) protect b) protects c) protected d) protecting
7. Because there is pollution, the fish will ....
   a) kill b) be killed c) killed d) kills
8. The river habitat will be ....
   a) destroy b) destroyed c) be destroyed d) destroying
9. A journalist .... be sent to investigate the river.
   a) will b) was c) are d) is
10. A newspaper article will be .... on the newspaper website.
    a) publish b) published c) publishes d) publishing
11. Garbage will .... picked up tomorrow.
    a) am b) is c) are d) be
12. The river will ....
    a) clean b) cleaned c) cleaning d) be cleaned
13. The beauty of the river will .... enjoyed by people again.
    a) am b) is c) are d) be

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. to - volunteers - old items - sent - Some - our school - .

....

2. brought - to - Were - the cheetahs - India - ?

....

3. dad - got - new - has - My - a great - job - .

....

4. is - Ali - a - journalist - sports - a big - in - newspaper - .

....

5. cakes - be - will - of - Lots - made - by - children - the - .

....

6. wrote - the report - Who - sent - and - it - ?

....

7. kept - and - chickens - sheep - Hani - barn - a - in - .

....

8. was sitting - I - the - in - shade - tree - of - the - .

....

9. like - writing stories - our - We - for - school newspaper - .

....

10. help - We - our pet - feed - to - at school - .

....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Your school concert

Guiding elements:

(Saturday - decorated - orchestra)

....

....

....

Unit (7) Making a new world

Vocabulary

edible cutlery	أدوات المائدة الصالحة للأكل	angelfish	السمكة الملائكية	plow	محراث
bike path	مسار دراجات	healthy	صحي	engines	محركات
decompose	يتحلل	a coral reef	شعاب مرجانية	solution	حل
prevent	يمنع	smooth	أملس	problem	مشكلة
glow-in-the-dark	منير في الظلام	a sea turtle	سلحفاة بحرية	effect	تأثير
filter straw	شفاطة لتنقية المياه	pops	أصوات فرقعة	trap	مصيدة / فخ
Tutankhamun	توت عنخ آمون	driverless	ذاتي القيادة	bacteria	بكتيريا
competition	مسابقة	control	يتحكم	knot	عقدة
recycle	يعيد تدوير "تصنيع"	interactive	تفاعلي	loop	حلقة
the future	المستقبل	planetarium	القبة السماوية	rope	حبل
junk food	طعام غير صحي	exist	يوجد	exciting	مثير
king	ملك	toothpaste	معجون أسنان	magazine	مجلة
chips	رقائق / مقرمشات	pain	ألم	period	فترة
birdfeeder	وعاء تغذية الطيور	mint	نعناع	diseases	أمراض
birdseed	طعام الطيور	paste	معجون	ink	حبر
clothes pins	مشابك ملابس	gatepost	سارية البوابة	safe	آمن
inventions	اختراعات	knives	سكاكين	flour	دقيق
blog	مدونة	spoons	ملاعق	refrigerator	ثلاجة
sea life	الحياة البحرية	plastic	بلاستيك	camera	كاميرا
cyclists	راكبي الدراجات	tasty	لذيذ	important	هام
dangerous	خطير	comments	تعليقات	ocean	محيط
solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية	material	مادة خام	mouse	فأر
environment	البيئة	interviewer	مُحاور	planet	كوكب

(If) Second Conditional "إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الثانية

Usage الاستخدام

1) We use it to talk about a situation that is imaginary or unlikely to happen.

نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الثانية للتحدث عن موقف خيالي أو من المحتمل عدم حدوثه.

If + past simple , subject + would / could + inf.

e.g. If I went in a time machine, I'd go to Ancient Egypt.

Subject + would / could + inf. + if + past simple

e.g. I would go to the future if I went on a time machine.

Question السؤال

If + past simple , would + subject + inf. ..?

e.g. If you had a lot money, would you buy a phone?

Would + subject + inf. + if + past simple ..?

e.g. Would you buy a phone if you had a lot of money?

as + adjective + as

- We use as + adjective + as to compare. The affirmative form means that the two things we are comparing the same in some way.

نستخدم (as + adjective + as) عند المقارنة. ويفيد هذا التركيب في حالة الأثبات التشابه والتماثل في أمر ما بين شيئين.

e.g. Ancient Egyptian toothpaste was almost as good as modern toothpaste!

بمعنى أن معجون الأسنان في مصر القديمة كان جيدًا تقريبًا مثل معجون الأسنان الحديث.

not as + adjective + as

- The negative form means that the two things are different.

أما في صيغة النفي فمعناه أن الشيئين مختلفان.

e.g. Traveling wasn't as easy as it is today. لم يكن السفر سهلًا مثل اليوم.

بمعنى أن السفر كان صعبًا، لكنه الآن أسهل.

Activities on Unit (7)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What is the large town trying?

....

2. What does the town encourage people to do?

....

3. What does the town want to build?

....

4. What will the invention help?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

bacteria - decompose - prevent - Store - Drink

Drinking dirty water can cause disease because dirty water has a lot of 1)...................... in it. To 2)...................... yourself from becoming sick, wash your hands often and drink clean water. 3)...................... fresh food in a refrigerator, or a cool dry place in your kitchen. The food will stay fresh and it won't start to 4)...................... .

- Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

change - exchange - environment - methane - carbon

Many countries still make electricity using fossil fuels like coal, oil, and gas. Burning fossil fuels creates 1)...................... dioxide and other greenhouse gases, like 2)...................... However, greenhouse gases are bad for the 3)...................... High levels of greenhouse gases like carbon dioxide cause climate 4)...................... and air pollution.

• Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

Fish - under - clean - camera - invent

Khaled : Have you heard about Dr. Amin's invention?

Ahmad : No, I haven't. What did he 1) .... ?

Khaled : He invented a special 2) ....

Ahmad : What can the camera do?

Khaled : It can take photos 3) .... water.

Ahmad : What is it called?

Khaled : It's called 4) .... camera.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Every morning, Rania's uncle, Mr Hamdy, filled his birdfeeders. Then he sat on a chair and watched the birds. One day, Mr Hamdy didn't feed the birds. "Mr Hamdy hurt his leg. It's difficult for him to fill his birdfeeders," said Rania's mom. Rania wanted to help Mr Hamdy feed the birds. Later, Rania took Mr Hamdy some koshari from her mom. She took some rope, a glue stick, and some clothes pins, too. Outside, Rania threw the ropes over the branch of a tree. She tied four birdfeeders to the rope with clothes pins. Rania put the rope around the chair, and tied a knot to make one big loop. Now Mr Hamdy could sit and enjoy feeding his birds thanks to Rania's inventions.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This passage is about Rania's ....
   a) study b) invention c) homework d) project
2. Every morning, Mr Hamdy .... his birdfeeders.
   a) filled b) felt c) failed d) fill

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the opposite of the underlined word "difficult"? ....
4. Why did Rania want to help Mr Hamdy? ....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. Vocabulary

1. Natural and organic things .... , but plastic doesn't.
   a) decompose b) leave c) stay d) fly
2. .... are very small living things that are in the ground and air.
   a) Bees b) Birds c) Bacteria d) Flies
3. If you .... something, you stop it from happening.
   a) send b) prevent c) receive d) buy
4. A .... is a serious sickness.
   a) file b) screen c) recorder d) disease
5. If you .... something, you put it somewhere until you need it.
   a) neglect b) store c) buy d) sell
6. Reem, Nagwa, and Lara decided to work together in a ....
   a) beam b) dream c) team d) cream
7. If Reem designed a time machine, she'd go to Ancient ....
   a) France b) Egypt c) America d) England
8. Nagwa would travel into the .... if she went in a time machine.
   a) present b) future c) hills d) lakes
9. The Ancient Egyptians made .... for their teeth.
   a) juice b) toothpaste c) pasta d) maps
10. .... cars don't need a driver to control them.
    a) Driverless b) Electric c) Magnetic d) Expensive
11. A .... is a place where you can learn about the stars and planets.
    a) planetarium b) aquarium c) stadium d) alley
12. In an .... exhibition, you can touch and move things.
    a) active b) activity c) interactive d) action
13. A .... person asks and wants to find out about things.
    a) patient b) afraid c) independent d) curious

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. Language

1. Spring isn't .... hot as the summer.
   a) as b) more c) much d) less
2. Villages aren't as .... as cities.
   a) busier b) busy c) busiest d) more busy
3. Fares is funny. Nadia is funny, too. Fares is .... funny as Nadia.
   a) as b) not as c) more d) much
4. Paper .... as expensive as computers.
   a) is b) isn't c) aren't d) doesn't
5. The roads in Ancient Egypt .... as busy as they are today.
   a) is b) was c) are d) weren't
6. Sherif is ten and his cousin is ten. Sherif is .... his cousin.
   a) older b) old c) as old as d) as old
7. There .... as many people in Ancient Egypt as there are today.
   a) wasn't b) didn't c) hadn't d) weren't
8. If I travelled into the future, I .... be very excited.
   a) will b) would c) shall d) can
9. If I .... Sharm El-Sheikh on vacation, I'd swim in the sea.
   a) visit b) visiting c) will visit d) visited
10. If you .... a competition, what would you do?
    a) wins b) won c) win d) winning
11. I .... scared if we went camping in the desert.
    a) won't be b) wouldn't be c) can't be d) am not
12. If I .... something, I'd invent a robot.
    a) invent b) invents c) inventing d) invented
13. If my grandparents .... in the country, they wouldn't have a garden.
    a) live b) don't live c) didn't live d) won't live

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. disease - serious - a - sickness - A - is - .

....

2. you - something - If - stop - prevent - , happening - it - you - .

....

3. clean - the - water - isn't - Sometimes - .

....

4. Luxor, - If - Karnak - visit - we - to - we'd - Temple - went - .

....

5. disease - can - dirty - water - Drinking - cause - .

....

6. edible - can - You - eat - cutlery - .

....

7. photographer - can - underwater - photos - A wildlife - take - .

....

8. at the planetarium - You - about - the stars - can - learn - .

....

9. things - new - invented - Egyptians - The Ancient - a lot of - .

....

10. diseases - What - to stop - the Ancient - did - use - Egyptians - ?

....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Paper in Ancient Egypt

Guiding elements:

(write - paper - ink - papyrus)

....

....

....

Unit (8) I can do it!

Vocabulary

afraid	خائف	cookies	كعك	article	مقال
anxious	قلق	advice	نصيحة	experience	خبرة / تجربة
determined	عازم / مصمم	energy	طاقة	confused	مرتبك / متحير
embarrassed	مُحرَج	fun	متعة	unsure	غير متأكد
independent	مستقل	pasta	مكرونة	opinion	رأي
patient	صبور	team	فريق	leader	قائد
store	متجر	extra	إضافي	follower	تابع
excited	متحمس	event	حدث	success	النجاح
awesome	رائع	competition	مسابقة	successful	ناجح
meal	وجبة	paint	دهان / يدهن	quickly	بسرعة
auntie	عمة / خالة	title	عنوان	carefully	بعناية / بحرص
flight	الطيران	poster	ملصق	project	مشروع
pleased	مسرور	poem	قصيدة	commands	أوامر
instructions	تعليمات	reason	سبب	personal statement	بيان شخصي
confident	واثق	independently	باستقلال	anyway	على أي حال
scientist	عالم	inventor	مخترع	future goals	أهداف مستقبلية
introduction	مقدمة	interests	اهتمامات	subheading	عنوان فرعي
quiet	هادئ	scary	مخيف	presentation	عرض تقديمي
sneakers	حذاء رياضي	adventure	مغامرة	aquarium	معرض أحياء مائية
compass	بوصلة	backpack	حقيبة ظهر	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
option	اختيار	topic	موضوع	community	مجتمع



The Present Continuous Tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

Form التكوين

Subject + (am / is / are) + (v + ing)

e.g. I'm walking to school.

- She is reading a book.

Usage الاستخدام

- **To express an action that is happening now.** لتعبير عن حدث يحدث الآن.

Keywords

Listen!	استمع!	today	اليوم	at present	في الوقت الحاضر
Look!	انظر!	now	الآن	at the moment	في هذه اللحظة

e.g. They are watching TV now.

e.g. Listen! The girl is singing.

- **We can also use it to talk about arrangements in the future.**
يمكننا أيضا استخدامه للحديث عن الترتيبات في المستقبل.

e.g. I'm helping my little brother with his homework tomorrow.

- **We often use a time phrase to show when this will happen. Time phrases include:**
غالبا ما نستخدم عبارة زمنية لبيان متى سيحدث هذا. تشمل العبارات الزمنية ما يلي:

Later	فيما بعد	this evening	هذا المساء	next week	الأسبوع القادم
next month	الشهر القادم	tomorrow	غدًا	at five o'clock	الساعة الخامسة

e.g. Heba is going on vacation next week.

Negative النفي

Subject + (am / is / are) + not + (v + ing)

e.g. I am not collecting eggs.

Yes / No question

Is + (he / she / it / a singular noun) + (v + ing)...?

e.g. Is he walking to school?

- Yes, he is. No, he isn't.

Are + (we / you / they / a plural noun) + (v + ing)...?

e.g. Are they watching a TV program?

- Yes, they are. - No, they aren't.

Wh-question

Q.W + (is / are) + subject + (v + ing)...?

e.g. What is he doing now? - He is playing sports.

What are you doing at the moment? - I'm studying my lessons.

Reported commands and requests

لتحويل الأمر والطلب إلى كلام غير مباشر نتبع الآتي:

١- نحول said to إلى told أو asked ثم نضع المفعول

٢- نستخدم to + inf في الجملة المثبتة.

٣: نستخدم not to + inf في الجملة المنفية.

Subject (الفاعل - المتكلم) + asked / told + object (مفعول) + to + inf / not to + inf

e.g. Mom said to Nada, "Can you pick up the books, please?"

Mom asked Nada to pick up the books.

e.g. My friend said to me, "Don't play in the street."

My friend told me not to play in the street.

Activities on Unit (8)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who was helping Reem with her math homework?

   ....

2. Why couldn't Reem get the right answers?

   ....

3. How did dad explain the homework?

   ....

4. How long did Reem's dad help her?

   ....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

hour - drove - oasis - sand - happy

Slowly, the car moved forward. Soon, the car was out of the 1)................ and they were on the road! The children laughed. Amina's mom 2)................ very carefully on the sandy road, and an 3)................ later the family arrived at the 4)................ They all had a great story to tell Amina's dad!

- Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

hard - university - school - National - environment

Next year, I'd like to study more science and learn more about the environment. I'd like to visit the Ras Mohammed 1)................ Park. When I'm older, I'd like a career that helps the 2)................ Dad told me to work 3)................, so that I could go to 4)................

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

grandparents - friends - park - going - sad

Anas : What are you doing on the weekend, Seif?

Seif : I'm going out with my 1)...

Anas : Are you 2)... somewhere?

Seif : Yes, we are.

Anas : Where are you and your friends going?

Seif : We're going to the 3)...

Anas : Are you having dinner with your 4)......................................, later?

Seif : No, I am not.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Fares had to do a project on the history of flight. He had to make a poster but he couldn't get it right. His friend told him to ask for help. His friend said it was good to check. His teacher told him to try again and to make notes on what he read. His mom asked him to try his best. His dad told him to stop and think. So Fares asked, he read, and he tried. He planned his ideas and his poster was the best!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1 This text is about Fares' ....

a) project b) trip c) teacher d) class

2 The underlined word "flight" means to go in the ....

a) sea b) mountain c) air d) lake

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did his teacher tell him to do?

....

4. What did his mom ask him to do?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. Vocabulary

1. My family will .... in a hotel in Luxor.
   a) stay b) visit c) plan d) buy
2. I'm .... my room in green and purple colors.
   a) picking b) playing c) painting d) washing
3. My mother liked my .... on her birthday.
   a) homework b) profile c) vaccination d) surprise
4. I'm .... I like doing my work on my own.
   a) dependent b) afraid c) independent d) determined
5. I don't like dark places because I'm .... of darkness.
   a) excited b) anxious c) afraid d) patient
6. When I do something wrong, I feel ....
   a) embarrassed b) happy c) glad d) delighted
7. He practices the piano to join the school ....
   a) concert b) game c) quiz d) project
8. To have more .... , eat healthy food.
   a) time b) space c) energy d) fans
9. My teachers love me because I don't .... them.
   a) appoint b) answer c) obey d) disappoint
10. We love each other because we .... turns in doing things.
    a) make b) bake c) take d) fake
11. I love planes. I know everything about the history of ....
    a) flight b) sight c) site d) kite
12. Our teacher gave us .... to follow.
    a) flowers b) boats c) instructions d) ships
13. Take time in doing things, don't ....
    a) brush b) rush c) push d) remember

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My dad told me .... for help if I need it.
   a) asks b) asked c) asking d) to ask
2. What .... your brother doing?
   a) will b) were c) is d) can
3. They are .... the museum tomorrow.
   a) visiting b) visited c) visits d) visit
4. The teacher told me .... come late.
   a) to not b) that c) not to d) for
5. Mom asked my sister .... the dishes.
   a) washed b) to wash c) washes d) washing
6. My dad told me to .... my room.
   a) tidy b) tidies c) tidied d) tidying
7. I made a mistake but the teacher told me to .... again.
   a) tries b) trying c) try d) tried
8. My mom is out, so I'm .... after my sister.
   a) looking b) looks c) looked d) to looking
9. My father told me .... my homework.
   a) do b) to do c) does d) did
10. My cousin asked .... to help him.
    a) I b) they c) me d) we
11. We asked the teacher to help ....
    a) your b) us c) their d) our
12. .... you spending your weekend on the farm?
    a) Can b) Will c) Are d) Do
13. She .... going to school tomorrow.
    a) doesn't b) don't c) can't d) isn't

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is - next - going - week - Where - he - ?

....

2. event - sports - Safia - in - part - the - took - .

....

3. couldn't - was - afraid - sleep - Shimaa - she - so - .

....

4. a scientist - Would - to - you - like - be - ?

....

5. rabbit - take - to look - our - Students - turns - after - .

....

6. working - do - like - you - What - project - on - ?

....

7. is - favorite - your - subject - What - ?

....

8. would - He - like - museum - to visit - the science - .

....

9. Saturday - school - on - concert - was - Our - .

....

10. shares - Nada - class - ideas - her - with - .

....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

A personal statement

Guiding elements:

(grade - own - group - science club)

....

....

....

Exam (1) محافظة القليوبية

معدل حسب المواصفات الجديدة [illegible]

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where did the men walk through?

....

2. How was the weather?

....

3. Why did they start to run?

....

4. Who fell down and couldn't move?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

good - volunteers - bad - health - equipment

Every year we have a garage sale at our school. This means 1) .... from our school bring in old items, like clothes, books, toys, and kitchen 2) .... These items are old, but they are still in a 3) .... shape. The money we collect is used to help children who need 4) .... care in hospitals.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

We still use many Ancient Egyptian inventions today. Clean teeth were important to Ancient Egyptians, so they invented a type of toothpaste. They mixed salt, mint, flowers, and pepper into a paste. To write down decisions, record events, and tell stories, Ancient Egyptians used papyrus. It was a type of thick paper made from reeds. It wasn't as smooth as the paper we use today, but it changed how people communicated. They also created an early type of ink to write on the papyrus. The Ancient Egyptians were one of the first groups of people to use a metal plow. A plow was used to dig and turn the soil. Later, they used animals to pull this plow.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is generally about ....

a) toothpaste | b) growing plants
c) ancient inventions | d) keeping animals

2. The meaning of "created" is ________.

a) drew b) put c) bought d) invented

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How did Ancient Egyptians make toothpaste? ________

4. Why did Ancient Egyptians use papyrus? ________

4 The Reader:

A) Read and write YES or NO.

1. Hatem, Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine are good friends. (________)
2. They had the idea to play volleyball. (________)

B) Read and answer the questions.

3. Who was the editor of the newspaper? ________

4. How did the team help a nearby family to find their lost cat? ________

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The wildlife in the river will ________ destroyed.

a) is b) be c) are d) was

2. If we ________ a time machine, we could go to so many places.

a) make b) making c) made d) makes

3. I think ink is as useful ________ paper.

a) most b) than c) more d) as

4. Dad told me ________ outside and play.

a) to go b) going c) goes d) went

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. a barn - keep - The family - the sheep - had - to - . ________
2. you - What - do - would - you - if - had a test - ? ________

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

A trip to the desert

Guiding elements:

(travel by - compass - tents - different animals - birds and plants - camping)

Exam (2) دمياط الجديدة

معدل حسب المواصفات الجديدة

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. When are all the news stories sent to the editor?

....

2. Who do you have lunch with?

....

3. Where do you have coffee?

....

4. How do you prepare for the next day?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

sports - gave - proud - shy - director

A wonderful day to remember! Luckily the weather was great for our sports day. The school 1)................... , Mrs. Mona was very happy. At the end of the day, she 2)................... prizes to all her active pupils. She said "I'm so 3)................... of all of you because you worked so hard to make this day fantastic." Then we ended the day with a tug-of-war in the field! We laughed a lot and went home tired, but happy, our 4)................... day was really amazing.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My name is Hamsa, and I'm in Grade 6. I work hard, and I'm confident. I like sharing my ideas in front of the class and enjoy working with others. I love studying history, math, and science because I'm curious about how things work. PE is fun for me, and even though my volleyball team doesn't always win, I still enjoy playing. After school, I'm part of the science club, where I get to experiment and learn even more. Next week, I'm competing in a science competition with three friends. We're designing a new robot, and I hope we will win! Outside of school, I enjoy spending time with my family and playing games with my friends at the park.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about a/an .... girl called Hamsa.

a) naughty b) hardworking c) lazy d) careless

2. Hamsa enjoys working ....

a) alone b) separately c) in pairs d) in a team

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where does Hamsa go after school? ....

4. What sport does Hamsa play? ....

4 The Reader:

A) Read and write YES or NO.

1. The videos of the newspaper team were very clear at first. (..........)

2. Hatem was a good leader editor. (..........)

B) Read and answer the questions.

3. Who organized the beach clean-up? ....

4. What did the newspaper team do to find Kitty? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The park is .... to be safe for people.

a) is designing b) designs c) designed d) is designed

2. My Dad .... me to do my best to get the highest mark.

a) said b) asked c) offered d) talked

3. She saw .... her family before she travelled.

a) off b) of c) down d) up

4. Sara .... with her grandma next Friday.

a) stay b) stayed c) is stayed d) is staying

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. first - Arab - Ibn Majid - the - was - seaman - . ...

2. did - have - What - farmer - animals - the - ? ....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

A biography of the person you like most

Guiding elements:

Who is he/she? / Why do you like him/her? / What makes him/her great?

Exam (3) مدينة المنصورة

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who was Fasal Al-Mosawi?

....

2. What did heuse after the accident?

....

3. When did helearn scuba diving?

....

4. Did he brokethe world record in scuba diving?

....



2 Read and omplete the text with the words from the box.

vet - tall - carrots - after - garden

My class his a class rabbit. He's called Crunchy. He lives in a small house called a huch in the school 1)........................ We take turns with the rest of the class to look 2)........................ him. We clean his hutch and give him new food and water. He loves 3)........................ and lettuce! My class likes looking after him and this teaches us how to care for pets and be responsible. The 4)........................ always comes in to check on him and give him his vaccinations.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

One day, Little Fish was swimming with her friends in the sea. They were playing games in the coral reefs. While they were playing, they saw a shadow moving towards them. The shadow was the shape of a huge shark with a big mouth and a long, strong tail. Little Fish was very frightened. All the fish decided to be very brave and swim together towards the shark. As they swam, they made a big shadow in the shape of a shark. The shark saw this big shadow and he thought there was a shark that is bigger than him. The shark thought it might be dangerous, and he turned around and quickly swam away. All the fish were happy because when they faced the shark together they achieved their goal.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c

1. The text is about ....

   a) playing games   b) coral reefs

   c) the fish and the dolphin   d) the fish and the shark

2. The underlined word "dangerous" means ....

a) unsafe b) safe c) messy d) wrong

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did the fish see while they were playing? ....

4. Why do you think the shark swam away? ....

4 The Reader:

A) Read and write YES or NO.

1. Hatem, Tarek, Bassant, and Nadine are good friends. (..................)

2. The newspaper team didn't have Kitty back home. (..................)

B) Read and answer the questions.

3. Who was the leader and the editor of the newspaper team? ....

4. What did Nadine's mom give her for her eleventh birthday? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If we went to Luxor, we .... visit Kamak Temple.

   a) would b) will c) can d) are

2. Some years ago, the giant pandas .... in danger.

   a) put b) putting c) puts d) were put

3. Spring isn't .... summer.

   a) hotter b) as hot c) as hot as d) hottest

4. The river will .... cleaned up.

   a) being b) been c) to be d) be

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. kitchen - was - the - in - Rania - with - mom - her - . ...

2. about - heard - Ibn - Have - Ahmad - Majid - you - ? ....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

The sports day at school

Guiding elements:

(Tuesday - football - basketball - races - amazing - happy)

Exam (4) محافظة سوهاج

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where does Marwan's family live?

....

2. How did Marwan's father travel to England?

....

3. What do Marwan and his brother like to play?

....

4. When doesn't Marwan go to school?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

information - media - learn - online - interesting

Our life is going fast now because of the latest technology. A lot of people do their businesses 1)................ Others use smartphones. They communicate with each other using social 2)................ Technology helps us get 3)................ easily. You can find out about the latest technology online. It's important to learn about the latest technology. I think technology is very 4)................ .

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Recycling is very important in our world if you want to keep this planet clean for our future. It is important for the environment because we are making new products which aren't used anymore. Recycling begins at home. If you are not throwing away any of your old products and using them for something new. Recycling can help our community and the environment. It helps to reduce air and water pollution. Before throwing anything, you should think about how to reuse it.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This text is about ....
   a) environment b) recycling c) community d) pollution
2. The underlined word "it" refers to ....
   a) environment b) recycling c) community d) pollution

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why is recycling important? ....

4. What should you do before throwing anything? ....

4 The Reader:

A) Read and write YES or NO.

1. Hatem was a good reader and great at writing. (..........)
2. Tarek was the photographer in the team. (..........)

B) Read and answer the questions.

3. What did the local man do when he found Kitty? ....
4. What was the problem with the team's first video? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. She saw .... her friend before she traveled to London.
   a) at b) on c) off d) up
2. My car .... by the mechanic yesterday.
   a) fixed b) is fixed c) was fixed d) were fixed
3. The plants are .... twice a week by the gardener.
   a) watering b) watered c) waters d) water
4. The project .... completed by the company tomorrow.
   a) will be b) will c) will being d) being

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. decided - travel - I - to - world - around - the.

....

2. language - What - you - up - pick - did - ?

....

7 Write an email of SEVENTY (70) words about:

to your friend Ahmad to tell him about your summer holiday. Your name is Samy and your email address is Samy@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is Ahmad@gmail.com.

Exam (5)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who was Ahmad Ibn Majid?

....

2. When was he born?

....

3. What was he fascinated by?

....

4. How many books did he write?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

why - newspaper - live - language - sky

Hi. I'm Sylvia! I'm an international journalist. I 1) .... in Egypt. I work for an English 2) .... People sometimes ask me 3) .... I wanted to be a journalist. I really love the English 4) ...., so I decided to focus on it at school.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

We use plastic in our everyday lives: at home, at school, and at work. Plastic can get into the ocean and create lots of problems. It can have a very bad effect on sea life: turtles, fish, and jellyfish, for example. Some animals think the plastic is food, and so they eat it and become <u>sick</u>. Some animals get trapped in the plastic and are hurt. Plastic in our water is also bad for the environment. A lot of plastic pollution is washed onto beaches, which looks horrible. If there wasn't so much plastic pollution, the seas and beaches would be safer for the sea animals and for us, too.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about .... in our everyday lives.
   a) wood   b) plastic   c) glass   d) metal
2. The underlined word "sick" means ....
   a) well   b) ill   c) health   d) healthy

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What happens if animals eat plastic? ....

4. Where is plastic pollution washed? ....

4 The Reader:

A) Read and write YES or NO.

1. Hatem was the editor. (....................)
2. Nadine was really interested in art. (....................)

B) Read and answer the questions.

3. What do the friends often chat about? ....

4. What is Hatem's job now? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The cheetahs .... to India.
   a) brought b) bring c) is bringing d) were brought
2. If I visited Sharm El-Sheikh on vacation, I .... in the sea.
   a) will swim b) would swim c) can swim d) swim
3. My sisters .... to the store to buy the food this afternoon.
   a) go b) will go c) are going d) goes
4. Dad asked me .... my little brother.
   a) helping b) helps c) helped d) to help

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. camera - He - invented - special - a - .

....

2. see - Did - you - pigeons - any - theatre - on - ?

....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Working in a team

Guiding elements:

(project - competition - activities - fun)

Exam (6)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب ←

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What was Omar's job?

....

2. What was he enjoying?

....

3. Why did he go to the hospital?

....

4. What did doctors remove?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

existed - inventing - still - Ancient - new

We think our modern world is full of exciting new inventions. However, the 1)............... Egyptians were as good as modern people at 2)............... new things. We 3)............... use many Ancient Egyptians inventions today. They have 4)............... for thousands of years. That's the sign of a good invention.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Cheetahs, the fastest animals in the world, have returned to India. They lived in India until the 1950s, but then slowly disappeared. However, much later, eight of them were brought to a big park in India - Kuno National Park. The Indian people are very pleased to have these animals back in their country. The cheetahs now live in a safe area, where they are fed every day. They aren't watched all the time, but they are <u>tracked</u> so they don't get lost. Some people are a little worried. This is because when the cheetahs move around more, they will meet other big cats, for example, leopards, which could attack the cheetahs. Some people are asking, "Is the area designed to be safe enough?" It's so important that they are protected.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about ....
   a) lions b) cheetahs c) elephants d) monkeys
2. The underlined word "tracked" means ....
   a) designed b) painted c) followed d) fed

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Which animals could attack cheetahs? ....

4. Why are cheetahs tracked? ....

4 The Reader:

A) Read and write YES or NO.

1. Bassant loves geography. (............)

2. The newspaper team made a flyer about Kitty. (............)

B) Read and answer the questions.

3. What did Nadine's mum teach her? ....

4. What is Nadine's job? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The chickens .... every day.

   a) will feed b) are fed c) will be feeding d) are feeding

2. If I .... a bike, I would make one with solar panels.

   a) design b) am designing c) designed d) will design

3. She .... for Paris next Thursday.

   a) leaves b) leave c) is leaving d) leaving

4. The teacher told us .... at our books.

   a) to look b) looks c) look d) looking

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. I - journalist - an - international - am - .

....

2. look - ideas - online - Can - for - we - ?

....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Personal statement

Guiding elements:

(grade - confident - team - science)

Exam (7)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب ب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who were the first people to use a metal plow?

....

2. What was a metal plow used to?

....

3. What did those people use to pull the plow?

....

4. Who use machines with engines to move the plows?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

store - surprise - dinner - meal - horrible

My parents are very busy this week, so I'm making 1) .... this evening. My sisters are going to the 2)...................... this afternoon to buy the food we need. Then, at five o'clock I'm cooking my parents' favorite 3) .... It's hawawshi. It will be a 4)..................... I hope they like it.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My class likes to raise money for local charities. Our teacher, Mrs Mariam, helps us organize a special event called Charity Day every few months. We put tables and chairs in the school hall. Then we decorate the hall with flowers from the school garden. On Charity Day, our parents and people from the community come to buy things. Some children make cakes and lemonade to sell. My friend Fares and his sister Laila make delicious snacks, too. We also bring books and crafts to sell. I like making models, so I make models and I sell them on the day. We give the money we raise to local charities. It's a special day for the community and it's always a lot of fun!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about raising money for local ....
   a) charities b) hospital c) parks d) airports
2. The underlined word "delicious" means ....
   a) horrible b) bad c) tasty d) terrible

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What do Fares and Laila make? ....

4. What do they decorate the hall with? ....

4 The Reader:

A) Read and write YES or NO.

1. Hatem was the editor of the newspaper. (....................)
2. The school football team was in the finals. (....................)

B) Read and answer the questions.

3. What did Bassant organize? ....
4. Was the school team successful? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The cheetahs .... every day.
   a) aren't fed b) aren't feeding c) don't feed d) didn't feed
2. The reporter's article .... by Nadine's uncle.
   a) is checking b) checks c) is checked d) checking
3. If Nadine .... her school bag, she would lose all her homework.
   a) lose b) losing c) loses d) lost
4. Dad told me .... outside and play.
   a) go b) to go c) going d) went

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. to - Amazon - go - the - Did - Emily - ?

   ....

2. Sameh - farm - lived - on - small - a - .

   ....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Omar Hegazy

Guiding elements:

(banker - removed - disabled - record)

Exam (8)

ه الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What was the project about? ....
2. What did Fares have to make? ....
3. Who told Fares to ask for help? ....
4. Who told Fares to try again? ....

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

Crowded - next - airport - school - like

Fares : Hello, Samir. Where have you been?

Samir : We've been to the 1) .... to see off my uncle and aunt.

Fares : Oh, dear! I've never been to the airport. What was it 2) .... ?

Samir : 3) .... We couldn't figure out where to go, but Mom found the right place.

Fares : Cool. We're going to the United States 4) .... year.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Junko Tabei was a famous and brave adventurer , who did every challenge she could. She loved climbing mountains and was the first woman to climb Mount Everest. She was born in 1939, and at that time, girls didn't usually do outdoor activities. But she trained hard on the mountains from the age of ten! As Junko grew up, she became more ambitious , and tried higher and higher mountains! She became fascinated by English, and started learning the language. She then learned many textbooks in English about climbing. Junko was also very sociable - she enjoyed making friends, and helped other women to become climbers, too. She knew about all kinds of dangerous weather on mountains, including avalanches . This is when snow high up falls down the mountain - it can be very frightening.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about a brave ....
   a) adventurer b) player c) signer d) doctor
2. The underlined word "frightening" means ....
   a) happy b) amazing c) wonderful d) scary

B) Answer the following questions.

3. When did Junko train hard on the mountains? ....

4. What kind of textbooks did she learn? ....

4 The Reader:

A) Read and write YES or NO.

1. Hatem Tarek, Bassant and Nadine are good friends. (..............)

2. Nadine's mum was a teacher. (..............)

B) Read and answer the questions.

3. What was Nadine interested in? ....

4. Who was writing about the school volleyball team? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Astronauts .... by doctors for their fitness.
   a) will test b) test c) are testing d) are tested

2. The inventions in the past were .... exciting as they are today.
   a) as b) more c) less d) many

3. What .... you do if you found a treasure?
   a) can b) will c) could d) may

4. His auntie .... after him this week.
   a) is looking b) look c) looking d) looks

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. He - a - town - lives - small - in- .

....

2. on - they - What - do - Friday - do - ?

....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Filter straw

Guiding elements:

(straws - removes - safe - diseases)

Exam (9)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What grade is Wael in?

....

2. What did Wael enjoy?

....

3. What did Wael like?

....

4. What subjects does Wael love?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

trip - year - career - science - voyage

Would you like to be an astronaut? It's a great 1)............................, but you need to work very hard. First of all, you should study 2)........................ at school and university. After this, you need to do a two- 3)........................ astronaut course. If you are chosen to join the next space 4)........................, you are very lucky.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Who doesn't love a giant panda? There are lots of videos of them on social media! Were any of the videos posted by you? Sadly, some years ago, giant pandas were put in danger. Much of their habitat was destroyed to build new homes. Their habitat wasn't protected. Pandas only eat bamboo, which was cut down for the houses. Many people were very worried, so the pandas were put into special areas, where they were protected. They were given as much bamboo as they could eat. This conservation work has been very successful. In the 1980s, there were only around 1,200 giant pandas. Now there are almost 2,000!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about "giant ....".
   a) elephants b) tigers c) lions d) pandas
2. The underlined word "habitat" means ....
   a) food b) drink c) home d) clothes

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why were pandas put in danger? ....

4. How many pandas are there now? ....

4 The Reader:

A) Read and write YES or NO.

1. Tarek knew a lot about films. (..............)
2. A local man found the cat. (..............)

B) Read and answer the questions.

3. What did Bassant encourage the younger children to do? ....
4. Why was the family sad? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I .... dinner this evening.
   a) makes b) made c) make d) am making
2. Safia told me .... play in the street.
   a) not to b) don't c) didn't d) to not
3. If he .... first, he'd be happy.
   a) came b) comes c) is coming d) come
4. Plowing the land wasn't as .... as it is today.
   a) easier b) easiest c) easy d) more easy

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. interesting - story - an - He - writing - is - .

....

2. stay - they - shade - Can - in - the - ?

....

7 Write an email of SEVENTY (70) words about:

to your friend Huda about "The Seabin Invention". Your name is Ali and your email address is Ali@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is Huda@gmail.com.

Guiding elements: (solution - seabin - trash - plastic - safer)

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Why are you making dinner this evening? ....
2. Who are going to the stores? ....
3. When are you cooking the meal? ....
4. What's your parents' favorite meal? ....

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

luck - awesome - test - happy - sad

Tarek : Hi, Seleem. You look 1) ....

Seleem : I am! I passed my science 2) .... with 72%.

Tarek : Oh, wow! That's 3) .... news.

Seleem : Thanks! I'm really happy.

Tarek : Well done! I'm so pleased for you! But I didn't pass my science test.

Seleem : I'm sorry, Tarek. Better 4) .... next time. I'm sure you'll pass next time.

Tarek : Thanks, Seleem.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

We think our modern world is full of exciting new inventions. We still use many Ancient Egyptian inventions today. They've existed for thousands of years. That's the sign of a good invention. For example, many ideas that are still important in modern medicine come from these times. <u>Ancient</u> Egyptians were as interested in health and medicine as we are. They understood how the human body worked, and used herbs to stop pain and diseases.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about .... in Ancient Egypt.
   a) sport b) music c) inventions d) parks
2. The underlined word "ancient" means very ....
   a) old b) new c) modern d) happy

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What were Ancient Egyptians interested in? ....

4. What did they use herbs for? ....

4 The Reader:

A) Read and write YES or NO.

1. Tarek knows a lot about sport. (..................)
2. Nadine reported on music competitions. (..................)

B) Read and answer the questions.

3. Where did Nadine's mum invite her? ....

4. What was the cat's name? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Astronauts ..... to swim three lengths in their spacesuits in a swimming pool.
   a) ask b) are asked c) asks d) are asking
2. If you .... to win a competition, you'd work hard.
   a) want b) wanting c) wants d) wanted
3. The teacher told Ali .... his book.
   a) to open b) opened c) opening d) opens
4. He .... to London tomorrow.
   a) fly b) flies c) is flying d) flying

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. fastest - are - the - Cheetahs - animals - .

....

2. man - Omar - a - happy - is - very - .

....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Writing in Ancient Egypt

Guiding elements:

(important - record - papyrus - ink)

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who was helping Reem with her homework? ....
2. Why couldn't Reem get the right answers? ....
3. How long did Reem's father help her with her homework? ....
4. Was her father patient or not? ....

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

pleased - pity - month - fantastic - school

Farah : Hi, Jana. I'm having a birthday party.

Jana : Oh, wow! That's 1) .... news. When's your birthday?

Farah : My birthday's next 2) .... I can invite all my friends.

Jana : That's great! I'm so 3) .... for you. What date is it?

Farah : It's on Saturday, September 16th. Can you come?

Jana : No, I won't be able to come. That's a 4) ....

Farah : Let's do something together on the weekend.

Jana : That's a good idea.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My class has a class rabbit. He's called Crunchy. He lives in a small house called a hutch in the school garden. We take turns with the rest of the class to look after him. We clean his hutch and give him new food and water. He loves carrots and lettuce! My class likes looking after him, and this teaches us how to care for pets and be responsible. Our science teacher, Mrs Doaa, is married to a vet. He comes in once a week to check on Crunchy.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a) a class rabbit b) a horse c) fishing d) swimming
2. The underlined word "small" is opposite to ....
   a) big b) tiny c) short d) thin

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does the rabbit love? ....

4. How often does the vet come to school? ....

4 The Reader:

A) Read and write YES or NO.

1. Hatem was the sports journalist in the team. (......................)
2. Bassant loves science and the environment. (......................)

B) Read and answer the questions.

3. What does Hatem write for? ....

4. What was Nadine interested in? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My mom asked me .... my best.
   a) try b) trying c) tries d) to try
2. We .... our parents tomorrow.
   a) help b) are helping c) helped d) helps
3. If you designed a time machine, where .... you go?
   a) will b) can c) would d) may
4. Their sleeping bags .... to a wall, so they don't float around.
   a) attached b) attaching c) are attaching d) are attached

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. go - She - water - could - the - under - .

....

2. to - you - What - like - would - learn - ?

....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Cheetahs

Guiding elements:

(fastest - disappeared - safe - tracked)

Exam (12)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب ب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who is Jumana staying with?

....

2. When is she leaving?

....

3. Where do her grandparents live?

....

4. Where are they going to have dinner?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

trained - First - climbing - Mount - river

Alyssa Azar is the youngest Australian to climb Mount Everest. But before 1)................... Mount Everest, she practiced hard. 2)................... of all, she crossed the Kokoda Track, in Papua New Guinea. Then she climbed 3)................ Kilimanjaro. Next, Alyssa 4)................... for many weeks.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Many countries still make electricity using fossil fuels like coal, oil, and gas. Burning fossil fuels creates carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases, like methane. However, greenhouse gases are bad for the environment. High levels of greenhouse gases like carbon dioxide cause climate change and air pollution. A company has created special floor tiles which create energy when people walk on them. The energy is turned into electricity and stored. Now the tiles are used in 36 countries around the world to create energy in different places: on train platforms, and in places where people play football.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about ....

   a) water b) energy c) carbon dioxide d) sports

2. The underlined word "creates" means ....

   a) causes b) takes c) breaks d) wastes

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What do greenhouse gases cause? ....

4. How do floor tiles produce energy? ....

4 The Reader:

A) Read and write YES or NO.

1. Hatem checked everybody's writing with the teacher. (..........)
2. The news team has enough paper for printing. (..........)

B) Read and answer the questions.

3. What did Bassant organize? ....

4. What is Nadine's job? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Astronauts' things .... safely on the spaceship.
   a) store b) storing c) are stored d) stored
2. I .... go to Ancient Egypt if I went in a time machine.
   a) don't b) wouldn't c) am not d) haven't
3. The Ancient Egyptians were as .... as modern people.
   a) better b) good c) best d) the best
4. She .... her shopping tomorrow.
   a) do b) does c) did d) is doing

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. health - were - Egyptians - Ancient - interested - in - .

....

2. do - What - he - yesterday - did - ?

....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Ahmad Ibn Majid

Guiding elements:

(seaman - explore - languages - navigator)

Exam (13)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب ←

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What was Omar's job?

....

2. How was he travelling?

....

3. What happened when he was travelling?

....

4. What did doctors have to do?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

camel - plane - shade - oases - tent

I have been to the Western Desert with a group of young people. We slept in a 1) .... and cooked our food outside. We visited some 2) .... I rode a 3) .... We traveled by jeep early in the morning. During the day, We rested in the 4) ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Sameh kept sheep and cows. He lived on a small farm He had an old barn where he kept his sheep. His friends Fareed and Hazem were worried about the old barn. They told Sameh to buy a new one. Sameh couldn't build a new barn because he needed to buy more sheep. That summer was very hot and dry. One day, Sameh's barn started burning! They saved the sheep, but they couldn't save the barn. While Sameh and his wife Amina built a bigger barn with wood, the sheep sat in the shade of the trees. In the winter, the barn was ready.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about .... Sameh.
   a) doctor b) teacher c) engineer d) farmer
2. The opposite of "dry" is ....
   a) cold b) hot c) wet d) hard

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What animals did Sameh keep? ....

4. Why couldn't Sameh build a new barn? ....

4 The Reader:

A) Read and write YES or NO.

1. Bassant was writing a report about a scientist. (..................)
2. Nadine was interested in maths. (..................)

B) Read and answer the questions.

3. What did Nadine's mum give her on her birthday? ....
4. Who was writing about the volleyball team? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If you don't know the meaning of a word, ... in a dictionary.
   a) look it up b) look up it c) fill it in d) fill in it
2. The astronauts' dirty clothes .... away.
   a) are throwing b) are thrown c) throw d) throwing
3. I'm as happy .... my friends.
   a) as b) more c) like d) most
4. Dad asked me .... out the garbage.
   a) put b) putting c) to put d) puts

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. on - in - walking - went - I - Spain - a - trip - .

....

2. What - the - about - project - school - is - ?

....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Garage sale

Guiding elements:

(volunteers - equipment - collect - hospitals)

Exam (14)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where did Mazen go on the walking trip?

....

2. With whom did he go?

....

3. How did they go to the National Park?

....

4. When did they go to the National Park?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

(hall - decorated - tickets - amazing - grass)

Our school concert was on Saturday. It was 1) .... ! Miss Laila's class put 150 chairs in the school 2) .... and 3) ....were sold on the school website. Mr Amir's class 4) .... the hall with flowers. Everyone was very excited.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In 130 BCE, a trade route was opened from a city in China called Xi'an. After some years, the trade route went across Asia to the Red Sea. There were many routes that went nearly 6,500 kilometers. The Silk Road was an important trading route for 2,500 years. It became known as the Silk Road because people used it to trade silk between China and countries in Europe. Silk was an expensive material, and at that time, it was only made in China. People from China sold silk, gold, perfumes, tea, and spices.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about the ....
   a) Suez Canal b) River Nile c) Red Sea d) Silk Road
2. The underlined word "known" means ....
   a) famous b) far c) remote d) ugly

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did people from China sell? ....

4. Why did the Silk Road have this name? ....

4 The Reader:

A) Read and write YES or NO.

1. Tarek was interested in sports. (..................)

2. The team helped to find a lost dog. (..................)

B) Read and answer the questions.

3. What was Nadine's mum's job? ....

4. Where was the exhibition "Art is for everybody"? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My friends .... me off at the airport.
   a) saw b) watched c) looked d) turned

2. Fruit .... by astronauts.
   a) eat b) ate c) is eat d) is eating

3. Would you come to the party if I .... you?
   a) invite b) invites c) inviting d) invited

4. Osama isn't as .... as Ahmad.
   a) short b) shorter c) shortest d) more short

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. parents - busy - are - Yaseen's - nowadays - .

....

2. Are - vacation - summer - going - this - on - you - ?

....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

My friend's problem

Guiding elements:

(sad - jokes - space)

Listening Texts

Unit (5)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

I have been to the Western Desert with a group of young people. I slept in a tent and cooked my food outside. I visited some oases. I rode a camel. I traveled by jeep early in the morning and in the evening. During the day, I rested in the shade. There was no internet and I could not use a phone during my trip.

Unit (6)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

Our school concert was on Saturday. It was amazing! Miss Laila's class put 150 chairs in the school hall and tickets were sold on the school website. Mr Amir's class decorated the hall with flowers. Everyone was very excited. Over 60 students were in the concert.

Unit (7)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

A large town is trying to be more environmentally-friendly. To encourage more people to cycle instead of drive cars, it wants to build roads that are safe and have good lighting. Bikes don't have strong lights, like cars, so this invention will help bikes.

Unit (8)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

Reem's dad was helping her with her math homework. It was difficult and Reem couldn't get the right answers. Her dad explained it very slowly. He helped Reem for half an hour until Reem understood.

Exams

Exam (1)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

Amin, Ashraf, and Sultan are friends. They got up early for their trip. They walked together through the desert. It was very hot. They saw a wolf so they started to run. Amin fell down and couldn't move. They helped him walk until they were safe.

Exam (2)

I'm Kareem. I'm a journalist. I work for a big newspaper. After I collect the news stories, I send it to the editor. I don't go to the newspaper on Friday, so I have lunch with my family. After lunch I have coffee in the living room. To prepare for the next day, I watch the news on TV and read newspapers.

Exam (3)

Faisal Al-Mosawi was a talented football player. However after a car accident he couldn't walk and had to use a wheelchair .So in 2009 he learned scuba diving. In 2018, he broke the world record and became the fastest diver in the world.

Exam (4)

I'm Marwan. I live with my family in Alexandria. My father is a businessman so always travels to other countries. Last week he traveled to England by plane. I like to play football with my brother. I don't go to school on Fridays and Saturdays.

Exam (5)

Ahmad Ibn Majid was the first Arab seaman. He lived hundreds of years ago. He was born in 1432, in what is now Oman. As a child he was fascinated by the sea. He loved to listen to stories about sailing from his father and grandfather over the years. Ibn Majid wrote 38 books describing what he knew.

Listening Texts

Exam (6)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

At the age of 25, Omar was a banker. He was doing well at work, and was enjoying his life. Then he had an accident. He went to the hospital, where the doctors removed part of his leg. He trained hard and broke a world record in holding his breath underwater.

Exam (7)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

The Ancient Egyptians were one of the first groups of people to use a metal plow. A plow was used to dig and turn the soil. Later, they used animals to pull this plow. This made plowing the land easier, but it wasn't as easy as it is today. Now, farmers use machines with engines to move their plows.

Exam (8)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

Fares had to do a project on the history of flight. He had to make a poster but he couldn't get it right. His friend told him to ask for help. His teacher told him to try again. His dad told him to stop and think.

Exam (9)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

My name is Wael. I am in grade 6. I'm independent, but I also enjoy working in a team. I'm sociable, and I like making new friends. I love English, math and science. I go to the art club after school. Next year, I'd like to study more science.

Exam (10)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

My parents are very busy this week, so I'm making dinner this evening. My sisters are going to the store this afternoon to buy the food we need. Then, at five o'clock, I'm cooking my parents' favorite meal. It's hawawshi! It will be a surprise. I hope they like it! I'm helping my little brother with his homework tomorrow, too.

Exam (11)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

Reem's dad was helping her with her math homework. It was difficult and Reem couldn't get the right answers. Her dad explained it very slowly. He helped Reem for half an hour until Reem understood. Reem's dad was patient.

Exam (12)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

Jumana is staying with her grandparents next week. She is leaving next Thursday and she is very excited. Her grandparents live in the city. They have planned a lot of things to do. They are going to a restaurant for dinner on the first night.

Exam (13)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

Omar Hegazy is a very amazing man. At the age of 25, Omar's life was going well. He had a good job as a banker. He was very active. One day, he was traveling along the road on his motorbike when he had an accident. Doctors had to remove part of his leg.

Exam (14)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

Hello, I'm Mazen! Last year, I went on a walking trip in Spain with my dad. My mom saw us off at the airport. When we landed, we got a bus to the Picos de Europe National Park. It's very beautiful, and it was quite easy to walk. We went in June, when it wasn't too hot.

Model Answers

Book Answers

Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. In 1432. 2. The sea
3. Sailing. 4. Sailors.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. languages 2. astronomy
3. sailors 4. monsoons

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. navigator 2. Astronomy 3. Sailors
4. navigate 5. Fascinated by

4) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. compass 2. sailing

B) Answer the following questions:

3. The books helped sailors travel from the Arabian Peninsula to India. East Africa.
4. The books.

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1. What type of books did Ibn Majid write?
2. Ibn Majid learned how to navigate the sea.
3. Ibn Majid lived hundreds of years ago.

6) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Ahmed Ibn Majid was the first Arab seaman, and learned how to navigate the seas. As a child, he was fascinated by the sea. He loved to listen to stories about sailing. He learned languages, and learned about math, geography and astronomy. He wrote 38 books describing what he knew.

Lesson (2)

Practice (P. 14)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. in 2. wake 3. pick up
4. saw 5. out 6. away
7. look it up 8. drops

2) Read and write the correct from of the word(s).

1. off 2. up 3. pick 4. away 5. in

Activities

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. To travel around the world. 2. Morocco.
3. A wheelchair. 4. Train and planes.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. food 2. riad 3. woke 4. picked

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. in 2. looked 3. woke
4. up 5. off 6. saw
7. out 8. away 9. off

4) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. June. 2. birds

B) Answer the following questions:

3. A walking trip in Spain.
4. It's famous for its wolves.

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1. My dad wakes me up in the morning.
2. Mom and I are putting away my clothes.

6) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

I went to the Pyramids on a school trip yesterday. The Pyramids are in Giza. I saw the Pyramids and the Sphinx. I saw a lot of tourists there. I rode the camel. It was amazing. I took some photos with my camera.

Lesson (3)

1) Read and complete the dialog.

1. fine 2. Himalayas
3. skills 4. challenges

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Amazon 2. took 3. put
4. canoe 5. back

3) Put the words in the correct order.

1. We use a cooker to make food.
2. Would you like to go on an adventure?
3. It's very cold in the Arctic.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. Omar Hegazy. 2. He is an athlete.
3. He shows we can achieve amazing things.
4. No, it wasn't.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. banker 2. active 3. motorbike 4. leg

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. achieve 2. as 3. motorbike

Model Answers

4. crutch 5. break 6. hold
7. on 8. follow 9. inspire
10. Sinai

4) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Omar Hegazy had to use a crutch after the accident.
2. Omar Hegazy had a good job as a banker.
3. He completed the swim in eight hours.
4. Omar had to remove part of his leg.

5) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. enjoying 2. two athletes

B) Answer the following questions:

3. They removed a part of his leg.
4. He broke a world record in holding his breath underwater.

6) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Omar Hegazy is a very interesting man who is a world-record-holding athlete. At the age of 25 he had a good job as a banker. One day, he was traveling along the road on his motorbike when he had an accident. The doctor removed part of his leg. Later he trained hard and broke world records.

Lesson (5)

Practice (P. 31)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. are taught 2. are chosen 3. are shown
4. are tested 5. are asked 6. are checked
7. are stored 8. are attached 9. is put
10. is heated

2) Read and write the correct from of the word(s).

1. grow 2. are thrown 3. packed
4. eaten 5. aren't 6. is cleaned

Activities

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. An astronaut. 2. To work hard.
3. Science. 4. Two years.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. fitness 2. spacesuits
3. spaceship 4. trip

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. are taught 2. study 3. is heated
4. cleaned 5. aren't 6. is grown

4) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. astronauts 2. wall

B) Answer the following questions:

3. At mealtimes.
4. Because this stops the food from floating away.

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1. The sleeping bags are attached to a wall.
2. Would you like to be an astronaut?
3. The team needs to keep fit in space.

Lesson (6)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. An adventurer. 2. Australian.
3. Mount Everest. 4. A mountaineering guide.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. Where 2. mountains 3. climb 4. Everest

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. ambitious 2. climbed 3. trained
4. got 5. avalanche 6. achieve

4) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. Alyssa 2. guide

B) Answer the following questions:

3. When she was 14. 4. She climbed Mount Everest.

5) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Alyssa Azar is an amazing young woman. She's from Australia. She's very ambitious adventurer. She loved sports as a child. She climbed Mount Kilimanjaro at the age of 14. After that she decided to climb Mount Everest. At the age of 19 she wrote a book about her adventure.

Lesson (7)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. At 5:30. 2. They walked together.
3. Backpacks with water and snacks.
4. Chatting about their lives and families.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. village 2. grew up
3. market 4. sunrise

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. sunrise 2. chatting 3. while
4. branches 5. pretended 6. touched
7. cooed 8. whispered 9. deer 10. realized

4) Put the words in the correct order.

1. The three men lived in the same village.
2. They decided to leave early before sunrise.
3. Who would you like to travel with?
4. Amin fell to the ground and pretended to be dead.
5. The pigeons cooed at each other.

Exam on Unit (5)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. An oasis. 2. A beautiful deer.
3. It ran away. 4. The scene was beautiful.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. liquids 2. cleaning wipes
3. spaceship 4. clothes

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. five-thirty 2. friends

B) Answer the following questions:

3. To the market. 4. With a stick.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write YES or NO:

1. No 2. Yes

B) Read and answer the questions:

3. Hatem
4. As he helps every body in school take an interest in sport.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. woke 2. are chosen
3. are tested 4. need

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. There's no shower on the spaceship.
2. We can travel safely on the sea.

7) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Last year I went on a school trip to Luxor. We went there by train. We arrived early in the morning. We had breakfast then we went on a tour to the monuments of Luxor. We saw the Valley of the Kings. It's big and interesting. We visited the temples, too. We took some photos there. It was a wonderful trip.

Unit (6)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. Our school. 2. Volunteers.
3. They can be used again.
4. Health care in hospitals.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. hutch 2. responsible
3. check on 4. vaccinations

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. volunteer 2. hutch 3. on
4. responsible 5. vaccinations

4) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. easy 2. football

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Because there are articles about people they know in school. 4. The editor.

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Noha sells old clothes and other use items.
2. Our teacher, Mrs Rana, is married to a vet.
3. Hassan sent an article to the school newspaper.

6) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Every year we have a garage sale at our school. This means volunteers from our school all bring in old items like clothes, books, toys, or kitchen equipment. These items are old, but they are still in good shape and can be used again. These items are sold to anyone who would like to buy them. The money we collect is used to help children who need health care in hospitals. That was very special for us!

Lesson (2)

Practice (P. 59)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. are 2. fed 3. cut 4. wasn't

2) Read and write the correct from of the word(s).

1. designed 2. put 3. aren't 4. destroyed

Activities

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. Cheetahs. 2. India.
3. Eight. 4. The Indians.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. aren't 2. tracked
3. designed 4. protected

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Were 2. protected 3. watched
4. were 5. brought

Model Answers

4) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. giant pandas 2. safety

B) Answer the following questions:

3. The pandas were put into special areas, where they were protected.
4. In the 1980s, there were only around 1,200 giant pandas.

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1. The cheetahs are fed every day.
2. The giant pandas were put in danger.
3. The bamboo was cut down for the pandas to eat.

6) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Cheetahs, the fastest animals in the world, have returned to India. They lived in India until the 1950s, but then slowly disappeared. The Indian people are very pleased to have these animals back in their country. The cheetahs now live in a safe area, where they are fed every day. They aren't watched all the time, but they are tracked so they don't get lost.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. A journalist. 2. In Egypt.
3. English. 4. At university.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. different 2. journalist
3. breaking 4. get up

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. staff 2. sociable 3. journalism
4. international 5. for

4) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. journalist 2. pleased

B) Answer the following questions:

3. The editor.
4. Because she described how the hotel staff felt.

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Ali studied journalism at university.
2. Does Syliva like living in Egypt?
3. All the news stories are sent to the editor.

6) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

I get up at 3 am. It's very early! It's very dark outside, and it's usually quite cold, too! I check my scripts for my news stories. I make sure they're ready. I drive to the location of the news story. I find the cameraman. The soundman gives me a microphone. I check everything works.

Lesson (5)

Practice (P. 72)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. killed 2. be 3. be checked
4. cleaned 5. will be 6. will
7. be fed 8. brought

2) Read and write the correct from of the word(s).

1. be 2. picked 3. be
4. put 5. won't be used

Activities

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. Her aunt. 2. Near a river.
3. The fishermen. 4. Dead fish.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. notes 2. promise 3. sent 4. woke

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. peaceful 2. promise 3. cleaned
4. be 5. killed

4) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. noisy 2. sad

B) Answer the following questions:

3. She saw dead fish in the water.
4. Her grandfather.

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Aya's cousin lives near a river.
2. My father helps me to find the truth.
3. The fish will be killed in the river.

6) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

The river will be cleaned. The trash will be picked up. New fish will be put in the river. New plants will be put at the side of the river. Dangerous fertilizer will not be used again.

Lesson (6)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. Last Thursday. 2. It was awesome.
3. They decorated the sports area.
4. All the parents.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. director 2. out 3. worked 4. tired



3) Put the words in the correct order.

1. We think all the parents loved it, too.
2. Lots of people watched the exciting games.
3. Our sports day was amazing!
4. The school director was very happy.

4) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. sports day 2. fantastic

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Last Tuesday, 13 June.
4. Lots of people watched the exciting football, volleyball, and basketball games.

5) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Student's answer.

Lesson (7)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. He is a farmer. 2. On a farm.
3. Sheep and chickens. 4. Ful mudames.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. rain 2. shone 3. barn 4. market

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Barn 2. Fall 3. Shade
4. Summer 5. in

Exam on Unit (6)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. In a small house in the school garden.
2. Carrots and lettuce. 3. It looks after the rabbit.
4. To check on Crunchy.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. destroyed 2. bamboo
3. protected 4. conservation

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. happy 2. dangerous

B) Answer the following questions:

3. So she could make delicious ful mudamas.
4. They advised Sameh to build a new one from bricks.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write Yes or No:

1. Yes 2. No

B) Read and answer the questions:

3. Nadine. 4. Because their cat was lost.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. fed 2. was cut 3. be sent 4. sold

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Giant pandas love eating bamboo.
2. Why was Heba excited last Monday.

7) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Hi, I'm Sylvia! I'm an international journalist, and I live in Egypt. I work for an English newspaper. People sometimes ask me why I wanted to be a journalist. I really love the English language, so I decided to focus on it at school. After that, I studied journalism at university. I think a journalist needs to be good at two things. Firstly, they need to communicate well to get a good story. Secondly, they have to write well and quickly, using correct spelling and grammar.

Exam on Review (3)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. A banker. 2. An accident.
3. They removed part of his leg.
4. Two disabled athletes.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. in 2. woke 3. figured 4. off

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. adventurer 2. began

B) Answer the following questions:

3. She was born in 1939.
4. She helped other women to become climbers.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write YES or NO:

1. No 2. Yes

B) Read and answer the questions:

3. They made a flyer about Kitty and a contact number phone.
4. He was away on holiday.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. are 2. up 3. finished 4. given

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. What were the challenges of the trip?
2. Bad news can become good news in the end.

7) Write an email of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Hi Granddad!

I've just got back from Luxor. When we got to Luxor, we filled in the form at the hotel, and went to our

room. It was very nice and comfortable.
Mom woke me up early so we could visit my uncle. He lives outside the city, so we left at 7 am. We figured out a good route, and enjoyed the countryside. We loved being at Uncle's house, and had a delicious lunch there.
On the way back to Luxor, we dropped off Uncle's friend at the bus stop. It was a fun day – I wish we lived nearer to Uncle, so we could see him more often!
See you soon!
Fatima

General Activities (P. 106)

1) Read and write Yes or No:

1. Yes 2. No 3. No
4. Yes 5. Yes 6. Yes
7. No 8. No 9. Yes
10. Yes 11. Yes 12. Yes 13. Yes

2) Read and answer the questions:

1. It started from China.
2. Deserts and mountains.
3. Precious stones, perfume, tea and spices.
4. Horses, wool, silver, olive oil and items made from glass.
5. Because the roads were sometimes old. Sometimes people tried to steal money and gold.
6. Food, music and crafts.
7. People shared ideas and things from their cultures.
8. It's a very important sea route for trade. People from different countries can share culture, too.

Unit (7)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. Takeaway food.
2. Plastic knives, forks and spoons.
3. We usually use plastic cutlery.
4. No, it doesn't.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. environment 2. paths
3. stores 4. Cyclists

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. cutlery 2. planet 3. decompose
4. edible 5. Cycling 6. fit
7. store 8. bacteria

4) Put the words in the correct order.

1. I think filter straws are the most important invention.
2. Bacteria is something that can cause disease.
3. It's important to prevent diseases around the world.

5) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. filter straws 2. delicious

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Diseases in many countries.
4. By using filter straw.

6) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

There are many inventions. People use these inventions in many fields. As for me I'd like to talk about smartphone. It's one the most useful invention. I can chat with my friends on it. I can do homework on it. I can do a lot of researches online by using smart phone.

Lesson (2)

Practice (P. 108)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. wanted 2. would 3. designed
4. would 5. had 6. wouldn't
7. could 8. came

2) Read and write the correct from of the word(s).

1. won 2. Would 3. do
4. had 5. got

Activities

1) Read and complete the dialog with the words..

1. poster 2. invention 3. ideas 4. machine

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. would design 2. wanted 3. had
4. didn't 5. stopped

3) Put the words in the correct order.

1. The children can look for ideas online.
2. If you traveled in a time machine, where would you go?
3. Are the children going to make a time machine.

Lesson (3)

1) Read and complete the dialog with the words.

1. did 2. dive 3. best 4. reefs

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. healthy 2. invention 3. covered
4. pops 5. take 6. like
7. sounds 8. feels

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. Because it's the day of the school trip.
2. The science museum.
3. By bus.
4. Driverless cars.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. control 2. sky 3. underwater 4. quiet

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Driverless 2. Interactive 3. planetarium
4. control 5. space 6. flying

4) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. bus 2. driver

B) Answer the following questions:

3. He showed the children around and answered all questions. 4. Wonderful.

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1. What is the school project about?
2. They went inside the planetarium to see planets.
3. Driverless cars don't need a driver to control them.

6) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Mazen, Fares, and Wael were excited. It was the day of the school trip to the science museum. They went there by bus. There was an exhibition about driverless cars. It was amazing. First, the children went to an interactive exhibition about robots. Then they go to the exhibition about driverless cars. It was a wonderful trip.

Lesson (5)

Practice (P. 120)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. as 2. good 3. interested
4. as 5. smooth 6. easy
7. as 8. as useful us

2) Read and write the correct from of the word(s).

1. as 2. short 3. dangerous
4. new 5. as

Activities

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. Exciting new inventions.
2. The Ancient Egyptians.
3. Thousands of years. 4. Yes, we do.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. useful 2. medicine 3. health 4. pain

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. as 2. smooth 3. useful
4. old 5. as

4) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. paper 2. write

B) Answer the following questions:

3. It was a type of thick paper made from reeds.
4. They burned wood or oil, and mixed it with water.

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Farming was very difficult in the past..
2. Ancient Egyptians understood how metal plows worked.
3. Ancient Egyptians invented a new kind of ink.

6) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep clean. Clean teeth were important to them, so they invented a type of toothpaste. The Ancient Egyptians mixed salt, flowers, mint, and pepper into a paste. The Ancient Egyptians also created an early type of ink. They burned wood or oil, and mixed it with water. The Ancient Egyptians use a metal plow. A plow was used to dig and turn the soil.

Lesson (6)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. At home, at school, and at work.
2. Lots of problems.
3. Turtles, fish and jellyfish.
4. They are hurt.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. trapped 2. beaches 3. stops 4. recycled

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. effect 2. trap 3. recycle
4. hurt 5. of

4) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. Ocean Net 3. reuse

Model Answers

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Because it catches trash in the sea.
4. It stops plastic from getting into the sea.

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1. We use plastic in our everyday lives.
2. The seabin is a great solution.
3. Plastic is bad for the environment.

6) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

The Ocean Net is a special invention that catches trash in the sea. It is a great solution to the problem of plastic in the oceans. This is for a number of reasons. Firstly, it helps sea life. It stops plastic from getting into the sea. Secondly, it's also good for the environment. It catches plastic objects. These plastic objects can then be stored and recycled.

Lesson (7)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. Mr Hamdy.
2. He filled his birdfeeder.
3. A chair.
4. To watch the birds.

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. birdseed
2. knot
3. clothes pins
4. birdfeeders
5. hurt

3) Put the words in the correct order.

1. What is Mr Hamdy using to help him walk?
2. Rania put the rope around the gatepost.
3. Why did Rania use paper and pencils?
4. There are clothes pins under the sink.

Exam on Unit (7)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. To keep clean.
2. Yes, they were.
3. A type of toothpaste.
4. Salt, flowers, mint and pepper.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. straw
2. bacteria
3. filter
4. prevented

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. old
2. inventions

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Herbs.
4. Yes, they were.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write Yes or No:

1. Yes
2. No

B) Read and answer the questions:

3. They don't know really how to make videos.
4. Mrs Basma.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. could go
2. traveled
3. as
4. fast

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Where does the camera take photos?
2. The children went inside the planetarium.

7) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

We use plastic in our everyday lives: at home, at school, and at work. Plastic can get into the ocean and create lots of problems. It can have a very bad effect on sea life: turtles, fish, and jellyfish, for example. Some animals think the plastic is food, and so they eat it and become sick. Some animals get trapped in the plastic and are hurt.

Unit (8)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. Last week.
2. Quiet and sad.
3. Some jokes.
4. To tell me the problem.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. answers
2. independent
3. patient
4. looking

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. space
2. out
3. for
4. of
5. Independent
6. hard
7. determined
8. Make
9. afraid
10. Embarrassed
11. patient
12. anxious

4) Put the words in the correct order.

1. She likes to find out solutions to problems.
2. He says that Lina always helps him.
3. You don't want to look silly.

6) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Last week I visited my friend Anas. While I was there, he was quiet and sad. I asked him what was the matter but he refused to tell me anything. I tried to make him happy. I told him some jokes but he didn't laugh. Finally, I decided to give him some space, and wait for him to tell me the problem. Was that right?

Lesson (2)

Practice (P. 148)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Are
2. cooking
3. visiting
4. is
5. isn't
6. baking

7. tomorrow 8. Is 9. is looking
10. making

2) Read and write the correct from of the word(s).

1. tomorrow 2. cooking
3. doing 4. are staying

Activities

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. My parents. 2. To the store.
3. At 5 o'clock. 4. Hawawshi.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. OK 2. doing 3. cooking 4. family

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Is 2. having 3. coming
4. tomorrow 5. sick 6. store

4) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. grandma 2. fantastic

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Because she can't walk far yet.
4. Our cousins.

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Yaseen's parents don't know about the meal.
2. We aren't going on vacation this summer.
3. Are you going anywhere this summer?

6) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

From: Yassen@gmail.com
To: Youssef@gmail.com
Subject: My arrangements for this summer
Hello Youssef,

How are you? I miss you very much. This summer. I'm visiting Luxor. It's a nice city. I love it very much. I'm going with my family. I'm taking lots of photos there. We're spending a week there. What about you?
See you soon
Yassen

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. To ask for advice. 2. Yes, they should.
3. Getting enough sleep.
4. To be a part of a team.

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1. presentation 2. should
3. notes 4. practice

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. sleep 2. special 3. advice
4. Worn 5. row 6. disappoint

4) Put the words in the correct order.

1. It should be fun to take part.
2. Being part of a team is great.
3. I would study a little bit every day.
4. If you had a test, what would you do?

5) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Mona is entering an art competition at 12:00 on Saturday afternoon. She should paint something she knows really well. She should spend time planning her ideas. She should make sure she has enough pencils and paint.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. Making new friends.
2. When you take part in a new sport.
3. Football and basketball.
4. Playing sports together.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. team 2. inspire 3. achieve 4. work

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. of 2. take 3. part
4. leader 5. on 6. new
7. for 8. successful

4) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. working 2. alone

B) Answer the following questions:

3. You might learn a lot. 4. Take part.

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Did you take turns in your team?
2. It's easy to make friends on a sports team.
3. Two people have more ideas than one person.

6) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Do you prefer talking or listening? Some people like to talk a lot. However, it's important to listen, too. A team works best when everybody takes turns to speak, and takes time to listen to each other. You can learn a lot when you take an interest in other people's ideas. This might even mean that you change your opinion.

Model Answers

Lesson (5)

Practice (P. 162)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. to 2. go 3. not to
4. open 5. asked

Activities

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. My mom. 2. I can't go wrong.
3. I shouldn't forget to have a break.
4. I go to bed.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. check 2. ask 3. keep 4. learn

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. flight 2. make 3. right
4. for 5. help 6. worried
7. in the library 8. tired 9. have 10. to

4) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Dad told me to go outside and play.
2. Dalia asked me to help with her homework.
3. Mom asked me to wash the dishes.
4. Ms Manal told Rashed to open his book.

5) Read and write the correct from of the word(s).

1. wash 2. open 3. told
4. stop 5. tidy

Lesson (6)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. I'm in grade six.
2. To share ideas in front of my class.
3. Yes, I do.
4. I enjoy taking part in group activities.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. science 2. friends 3. robot 4. wins

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. share 2. in 3. science
4. club 5. yourself 6. information
7. topic

4) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. math 2. win

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Because I want to understand how the world works.
4. Yes, I have.

5) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

My name is Noha and I'm in Grade 6. I work hard and I'm confident – I'm happy to share my ideas in front of the class. I enjoy working in a team, and I like working independently, too. I enjoy taking part in group activities. I enjoy studying history and math. I go to a science club after school. Next year, I would like to do more science activities and visit a science museum.

Lesson (7)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. The map.
2. Because it was difficult to read.
3. Seleem. 4. In his bag.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. hands 2. north 3. pointing 4. sun

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. oasis 2. groups

B) Answer the following questions:

4. To win. 5. At school.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. blew 2. scouts
3. oasis 4. leader

5) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Last year I went on adventure in the desert. We met at school. We went there by bus. We walked in the desert to go to an oasis. Unfortunately, we lost the compass. My friends were afraid. I could find the north by using the hands of my watch.

Exam on Unit (8)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. Next year.
2. A science museum.
3. A scientist or an inventor.
4. A science teacher.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. because 2. works 3. volleyball 4. win

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. checked 2. unluckily

B) Answer the following questions:

3. His lunch, his sweater, and his map.
4. No, he didn't.



4) The Reader.

A) Read and write Yes or No:

1. No 2. Yes

B) Read and answer the questions:

3. A reporter.

4. A producer for a sports program.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Are 2. baking

3. have 4. open

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Dad told me to go outside and play.

2. Did mom ask you to wash the dishes?

7) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

My name is Noha and I'm in Grade 6. I work hard and I'm confident – I'm happy to share my ideas in front of the class. I enjoy working in a team, and I like working independently, too. I enjoy taking part in group activities. I enjoy studying history and math. I go to a science club after school. Next year, I would like to do more science activities and visit a science museum.

Exam on Review (4)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. The Ancient Egyptians. 2. Their teeth.

3. A type of toothpaste. 4. Yes, it was.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. machine 2. robot 3. like 4. as

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. invention 2. prize

B) Answer the following questions:

3. To do independent work.

4. Because we listen to each other and share our ideas.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write YES or NO:

1. Yes 2. No

B) Read and answer the questions:

3. Hatem. 4. A science reporter.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. told 2. designed

3. would 4. playing

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. She's not visiting her friends next week.

2. She decided to work on her own.

7) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Have you ever been part of a team? Maybe you've worked on a class project, played in a sports competition, or answered questions in a school quiz. There are lots of times when you can work in a team at school and in clubs, or in activities out of school. Some people say that they like working on their own. That's fine – it's good to be independent and to focus on your work. However, if you work in a team, you might find that it's fun to take part. You might learn a lot!

The Story

FICTION READER: NEWS TEAM

Part (1)

1) Read and write Yes or No:

1. Yes 2. No 3. Yes 4. No

5. Yes 6. Yes 7. No 8. No

9. Yes 10. No

2) Read and answer the questions:

1. When they were in Grade 6.

2. Their lives and work. 3. Hatem.

4. To make sure the English. 5. Tarek.

6. They noticed plastic and other trash.

7. A beach clean up. 8. Art

Part (2)

1) Read and write Yes or No:

1. No 2. Yes 3. No 4. Yes

5. Yes 6. No 7. No 8. Yes

9. Yes 10. No

2) Read and answer the questions:

1. Mrs. Basma.

2. An important local scientist.

3. Because they lost their cat.

4. Tarek.

5. They didn't have enough paper.

6. Mr. Medhat.

7. To put the written stories and videos on the school website.

8. She was enthusiastic.

Part (3)

1) Read and write Yes or No:

1. Yes 2. Yes 3. No 4. Yes

5. No 6. No 7. Yes 8. Yes

9. Yes 10. No

2) Read and answer the questions:

1. to put the articles and the videos on the school website. 2. They looked a bit worried.

3. At break time. 4. Yes.

5. He writes for the biggest newspaper in Cairo.

6. Nadine is a photographer.

7. Because the voices are a bit unclear.

8. Bassant works now as a science reporter and writes about climate change.

General Activities

1) Read and write Yes or No:

1. No 2. No 3. No

4. No 5. No 6. Yes

7. No 8. Yes 9. No

10. Yes 11. Yes 12. No

2) Read and answer the questions:

1. Hatem. 2. The PE teacher.

3. A beach clean-up.

4. She liked doing paintings and pottery.

5. The local deaf club.

6. He rang the newspaper team.

7. Paper for printing. 8. The video was unclear.

Final Revision Answers

Unit (5)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. The Western Desert. 2. In a tent.

3. By Jeep. 4. During the day.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. environment 2. canoe 3. photos 4. sleep

-) Read and complete the text.

1. chosen 2. stored

3. float 4. spaceship

-) Read and complete the dialog.

1. see off 2. flight 3. long 4. for

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. navigator 2. unknown

B) Answer the following questions:

3. In 1432.

4. He wrote about routes to different places and the history of sailing.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. navigate 2. Peninsula 3. astronomy

4. sailors 5. fascinated 6. navigator

7. wheelchair 8. environment 9. banker
10. inspires 11. remove 12. Spacesuits
13. course

-) **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.**

1. is prepared 2. are shown 3. are tested
4. is watched 5. are done 6. are recorded
7. is checked 8. thrown 9. off
10. in 11. wakes 12. drops 13. out

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Ibn Majid wrote books about the history of sailing.
2. I went to the airport to see off my cousin.
3. Why did you choose this trip to go on?
4. Omar swam across the Aqaba Gulf in eight hours.
5. The astronauts are shown how to do first aid.
6. Which countries did he cycle across?
7. We saw a beautiful fox and her baby.
8. Omar was inspired by two athletes with disabilities.
9. Where was Little Fish playing with her friends?
10. Miss Malak is fascinated by Ancient Egyptians.

6) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Alyssa Azar is the youngest Australian to climb Mount Everest. But before climbing Mount Everest, she practiced hard. First of all, she crossed the Kokoda Track, in Papua New Guinea. Then she climbed Mount Kilimanjaro. Next, Alyssa trained for many weeks. In 2014, she got to the bottom of Mount Everest, but there was an avalanche. In 2015, she got to the bottom of Mount Everest again, but there was an earthquake. Finally, in 2016, when she was nineteen years old, Alyssa got to the top of Mount Everest.

Unit (6)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. On Saturday. 2. 150 chairs.
3. They decorated the hall with flowers.
4. Everyone was excited.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. brought 2. fed 3. tracked 4. protected

-) **Read and complete the text.**

1. sheep 2. barn 3. worried 4. buy

-) **Read and complete the dialog.**

1. hurt 2. That's 3. pity 4. Thanks

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. Charity 2. models

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Our parents and people from the community come.
4. Fares and Laila make delicious snacks, and models to sell.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. equipment 2. vaccination 3. editor
4. hutch 5. newspaper 6. volunteers
7. peaceful 8. investigate 9. promised
10. barn 11. shade 12. fall
13. summer

-) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. were 2. watched 3. designed
4. were 5. are 6. protected
7. be killed 8. destroyed 9. will
10. published 11. be 12. be cleaned
13. be

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Some volunteers sent old items to our school.
2. Were the cheetahs brought to India?
3. My dad has got a great new job.
4. Ali is a sports journalist in a big newspaper.
5. Lots of cakes will be made by the children.
6. Who wrote the report and sent it?
7. Hani kept sheep and chickens in a barn.
8. I was sitting in the shade of the tree.
9. We like writing stories for our school newspaper.
10. We help to feed our pet at school.

6) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Our school concert was on Saturday. It was amazing! Miss Laila's class put 150 chairs in the school hall and tickets were sold on the school website. Mr Amir's class decorated the hall with flowers. Everyone was very excited. Over 60 students were in the concert. There are 24 students in the orchestra. They play lots of different musical instruments including the violin, flute, guitar, and piano. The choir has over 30 students from different years. It was an awesome concert.

Unit (7)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. To be more environmentally-friendly.
2. To cycle instead of driving cars.
3. Roads that are safe. 4. Bikes.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. bacteria 2. prevent 3. Store 4. decompose

-) Read and complete the text.

1. carbon 2. methane
3. environment 4. change

-) Read and complete the dialog.

1. invent 2. camera 3. under 4. Fish

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. invention 2. filled

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Easy. 4. Because he hurt his leg.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. decompose 2. Bacteria 3. prevent
4. disease 5. store 6. team
7. Egypt 8. future 9. toothpaste
10. Driverless 11. planetarium 12. interactive
13. curious

-) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. as 2. busy 3. as
4. isn't 5. weren't 6. as old as
7. weren't 8. would 9. visited
10. won 11. wouldn't be 12. invented
13. didn't live

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1. A disease is a serious sickness.
2. If you prevent something, you stop it happening.
3. Sometimes the water isn't clean.
4. If we went to Luxor, we'd visit Karnak Temple.
5. Drinking dirty water can cause disease.
6. You can eat edible cutlery.
7. A wildlife photographer can take photos underwater.
8. You can learn about the stars at the planetarium.
9. The Ancient Egyptians invented a lot of new things.
10. What did the Ancient Egyptians use to stop diseases?

Model Answers

6) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

In Ancient Egypt, it was important to write down decisions, record events, and tell stories. For this, people needed paper and ink. Papyrus was a type of thick paper made from reeds. It wasn't as smooth as the paper we use today, but it changed how people communicated. The Ancient Egyptians also created an early type of ink. They burned wood or oil, and mixed it with water. Then they used the ink to write on the papyrus.

Unit (8)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. Her dad. 2. Because it was difficult.
3. Slowly. 4. Half and hour

2) Read and complete the text.

1. sand 2. drove 3. hour 4. oasis

-) Read and complete the text.

1. National 2. environment
3. hard 4. university

-) Read and complete the dialog.

1. friends 2. going
3. park 4. grandparents

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. project 2. air

B) Answer the following questions:

3. To try again and make notes on what he read.
4. To try his best.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. stay 2. painting 3. surprise
4. independent 5. afraid 6. embarrassed
7. concert 8. energy 9. disappoint
10. take 11. flight 12. instructions
13. rush

-) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. to ask 2. is 3. visiting
4. not to 5. to wash 6. tidy
7. try 8. looking 9. to do
10. me 11. us 12. Are 13. isn't

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Where is he going next week?
2. Safia took part in the sports event.
3. Shimaa was afraid so she couldn't sleep.
4. Would you like to be a scientist?
5. Students take turns to look after our rabbit.
6. What project do you like working on?
7. What is your favourite subject?
8. He would like to visit the science museum.
9. Our school concert was on Saturday.
10. Nada shares ideas with her class.

6) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

My name is Seif. I am twelve years old. I'm in grade six. I'm independent but I enjoy working in a team. I love English, art and PE. I go to art club on the weekend. I'm taking part in a competition next week. Next year, I want to do research and study more science to learn more about how the world works.

Exams

Exam (1)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. The desert. 2. It was very hot.
3. Because they saw a wolf. 4. Amin.

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1. volunteers 2. equipment 3. good 4. bad

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. ancient inventions. 2. invented

B) Answer the following questions:

3. They mixed salt, mint, flowers and pepper into a paste.
4. To write down decisions, record events, and tell stories.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write Yes or No:

1. Yes 2. No

B) Read and answer the questions:

3. Hatem.
4. They made a flyer about kitty.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. be 2. made
3. as 4. to go

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. The family had a barn to keep the sheep.
2. What would you do if you had a test?

7) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Last weekend, we went to the desert. We traveled by car and used a compass to find the way.

we set up tents for camping. The desert was so quiet and beautiful. I saw different animals, birds, and plants. At night, we sat under the stars and talked. It was so much fun to explore and enjoy nature in the desert! I hope to go again soon.

Exam (2)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. After I collect the news stories.
2. I have lunch with my family.
3. In the living room.
4. I watch the news on TV and read newspapers.

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1. director 2. gave 3. proud 4. sports

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. hardworking 2. in a team

B) Answer the following questions:

3. She enjoys spending time with her family and playing games with her friends at the park.
4. Volleyball.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write Yes or No:

1. No. 2. Yes

B) Read and answer the questions:

3. Bassant.
4. They made a flyer about Kitty with a photo of her, and a contact phone number.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. designed 2. asked 3. off 4. is staying

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Ibn Majid was the first Arab seaman.
2. What animals did the farmer have?

7) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Student's answer.

Exam (3)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. He was a talented football player.
2. A wheelchair.
3. In 2008. 4. Yes, he did.

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1. garden 2. after 3. carrots 4. vet

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. the fish and the shark 2. unsafe

B) Answer the following questions:

3. A huge shark.
4. Because he was afraid.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write Yes or No:

1. Yes 2. No

B) Read and answer the questions:

3. Hatem. 4. A camera.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. would 2. were put 3. as hot as 4. be

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Rania was in the kitchen with her mom.
2. Have you heard about Ahmad Ibn Majid?

7) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

On Tuesday, we had sports day at school. It was amazing and so much fun! We played football and basketball with our friends. There were also races, and everyone ran very fast. All the students were happy and cheered for each other. The teachers helped us and gave prizes to the winners. It was a wonderful day, and I felt very proud to be part of it. I love sports day!

Exam (4)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. In Alexandria. 2. By plane.
3. Football. 4. On Fridays and Saturdays.

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1. online 2. media 3. information 4. interesting

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. recycling 2. environment

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Because it keeps our planet clean.
4. You should think about how to reuse it.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write Yes or No:

1. Yes 2. No

B) Read and answer the questions:

3. He rang the newspaper team.
4. It was unclear.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. off 2. was fixed
3. watered 4. will be

t the words in the correct order.

1. I decided to travel around the world.
2. What language did you pick up?

7) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Student's answer.

Exam (5)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. The first Arab seaman. 2. In 1432.
3. The sea. 4. 38.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. live 2. newspaper
3. why 4. language

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. plastic 2. ill

B) Answer the following questions:

3. They become sick.
4. Onto beaches.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write Yes or No:

1. Yes 2. Yes

B) Read and answer the questions:

3. Their school days.
4. He is a famous journalist.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. were brought 2. would swim
3. are going 4. to help

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. He invented a special camera.
2. Did you see any pigeons on the tree?

7) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Have you ever been part of a team? Maybe you've worked on a class project, played in a sports competition, or answered questions in a school quiz. There are lots of times when you can work in a team at school and in clubs, or in activities out of school. Some people say that they like working on their own. That's fine – it's good to be independent and to focus on your work. However, if you work in a team, you might find that it's fun to take part. You might learn a lot!

Exam (6)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. A banker. 2. His life.
3. Because he had an accident.
4. A part of his leg.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. Ancient 2. inventing 3. still 4. existed

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. cheetahs 2. followed

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Leopards. 4. So they don't get lost.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write Yes or No:

1. No 2. Yes

B) Read and answer the questions:

3. Different ways of painting and making art.
4. She is a photographer.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. are fed 2. designed
3. is leaving 4. to look

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. I am an international journalist.
2. Can we look online for ideas?

7) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

My name is Noha. I'm in Grade 6. I work hard and I'm confident. I'm happy to share my ideas in front of the class. I enjoy working in a team, and I like working independently, too. I enjoy studying history and math. I love science, too, because I want to understand how the world works.

Exam (7)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. The Ancient Egyptians.
2. To dig and turn the soil.
3. Animals. 4. Farmers.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. dinner 2. store 3. meal 4. surprise

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. charities 2. tasty

B) Answer the following questions:

3. They make delicious snacks.

4. Flowers from the school garden.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write Yes or No:

1. Yes 2. No

B) Read and answer the questions:

3. A beach clean-up. 4. Yes, it was.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. aren't fed 2. is checked

3. lost 4. to go

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Did Emily go to the Amazon?

2. Sameh lived on a small farm.

7) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

At the age of 25, Omar was a banker. He was doing well at work, and was enjoying his life. Then he had an accident. He went to hospital, where the doctors removed part of his leg. Then, Omar heard about two disabled athletes, and he wanted to be like them. He started training hard and working on his fitness. Amazingly, he broke a world record in holding his breath underwater. Now, Omar motivates people all around the world.

Exam (8)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. The history of flight. 2. A poster.

3. His friend. 4. His teacher.

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1. airport 2. like 3. Crowded 4. next

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. adventurer 2. scary

B) Answer the following questions:

3. From the age of ten.

4. Textbooks about climbing.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write Yes or No:

1. Yes 2. No

B) Read and answer the questions:

3. Art. 4. Tarek.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1. are tested 2. as

3. could 4. is looking

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. He lives in a small town.

2. What do they do on Friday?

7) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

When we think of drinking straws, we usually think of drinking something tasty. However, one type of straw solves problems caused by dirty water. A filter straw removes dangerous bacteria from water. The bacteria can't pass through the straw. This makes the water safe to drink. In this way, filter straws have prevented diseases in many countries, so fewer people are getting sick.

Exam (9)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. He's in grade 6.

2. He enjoys working in a team.

3. He likes making new friends.

4. English, maths and science.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. career 2. science 3. year 4. trip

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. pandas 2. home

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Because much of their habitat was destroyed.

4. 2,000

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write Yes or No:

1. No 2. Yes

B) Read and answer the questions:

3. To recycle the school trash.

4. Because they lost their cat.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. am making 2. not to 3. came 4. easy

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. He is writing an interesting story.

2. Can they stay in the shade?

7) Write an email of SEVENTY (70) words about:

From: Ali@gmail.com

To: Huda@gmail.com

Subject: The seabin invention

Dear Huda,

How are you? I'm writing to tell you about a solution to the problem of trash in the sea. The seabin is an interesting solution that catches trash in the sea. It's made up of a filter, pump, and bucket. Firstly, it

helps remove many things from the ocean, for example, plastic, paper, and cardboard. Secondly, it also helps remove fuel and oil from the water and this makes the water cleaner and safer for sea life.

Yours,

Ali

Exam (10)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. Because my parents are very busy.
2. My sister. 3. At 5 o'clock. 4. Hawawshi

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1. happy 2. test 3. awesome 4. luck

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. inventions 2. old

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Health and medicine.
4. To stop pain and diseases.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write Yes or No:

1. Yes 2. No

B) Read and answer the questions:

3. To an art exhibition on the local deaf club.
4. Kitty.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. are asked 2. wanted
3. to open 4. is flying

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Cheetahs are the fastest animals.
2. Omar is a very happy man.

7) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

In Ancient Egypt, it was important to write down decisions, record events, and tell stories. For this, people needed paper and ink. Papyrus was a type of thick paper made from reeds. It wasn't as smooth as the paper we use today, but it changed how people communicated. The Ancient Egyptians also created an early type of ink. They burned wood or oil, and mixed it with water. Then they used the ink to write on the papyrus.

Exam (11)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. Her dad.
2. Because the homework was difficult.
3. For half an hour.
4. Her father was patient.

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1. fantastic 2. month 3. pleased 4. pity

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. a class rabbit 2. big

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Carrots and lettuce. 4. Once a week.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write Yes or No:

1. No 2. Yes

B) Read and answer the questions:

3. The biggest newspaper in Cairo. 4. Art

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. to try 2. are helping
3. would 4. are attached

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. She could go under the water.
2. What would you like to learn?

7) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Cheetahs are the fastest animals in the world. They lived in India until the 1950s, but then slowly disappeared. However, much later, eight of them were brought to a big park in India – Kuno National Park. The Indian people are very pleased to have these animals back in their country. The cheetahs now live in a safe area, where they are fed every day. They aren't watched all the time, but they are tracked so they don't get lost.

Exam (12)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. With her grandparents.
2. Next Thursday.
3. In the city. 4. To a restaurant.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. climbing 2. First 3. Mount 4. trained

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. energy 2. causes

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Climate change and air pollution.

4. When people walk on them.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write Yes or No:

1. Yes 2. No

B) Read and answer the questions:

3. A beach clean-up. 4. She is a photographer.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. are stored 2. wouldn't
3. good 4. is doing

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Ancient Egyptians were interested in health.
2. What did he do yesterday?

7) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Ahmad Ibn Majid is the person who made it easier for us to travel on the sea today. He was the first Arab seaman. He was born in 1432 in what is now Oman. As a child, he was fascinated by the sea. He wanted to explore the seas and oceans. He was a very intelligent man and studied a lot. He learned languages, and learned about math, geography, and astronomy. He became known as a master navigator.

Exam (13)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. A banker. 2. On his motorbike.
3. He had an accident.
4. To remove part of his leg.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. tent 2. oases 3. camel 4. shade

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. farmer 2. wet

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Sheep and cows.
4. Because he needed to buy more sheep.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write Yes or No:

1. No 2. Yes

B) Read and answer the questions:

3. A camera. 4. Tarek.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. look it up 2. are thrown
3. as 4. to put

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. I went on a walking trip in Spain.
2. What is the school project about?

7) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Student's answer.

Exam (14)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1. In Spain. 2. His dad.
3. By bus. 4. In June.

2) Read and complete the text.

1. amazing 2. hall 3. tickets 4. decorated

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. Silk Road 2. famous

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Silk, gold, perfumes, tea and spices.
4. Because people used it to trade silk between China and countries in Europe.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write Yes or No:

1. Yes 2. No

B) Read and answer the questions:

3. She was an artist.
4. In the local deaf club.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. saw 2. is eaten
3. invited 4. short

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Yaseen's parents' are busy nowadays.
2. Are you going on vacation this summer?

7) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

My friend was sad because he had a problem at school. I told him some funny jokes to make him smile. He felt a little better after laughing. I also gave him some space to think and feel calm. Later, we talked about his problem, and I helped him find a solution. He was happy again, and I was glad I could help my friend. Friends always help each other!